

# STORIES FROM THE BIBLE

An English Textbook for Tibetans

དམ་པའི་གསུང་རབ་ལས་བརྒྱུ་པའི་སྐྱེང་གཏམ།  
དབྱིན་འོད་ཤན་སྐྱུར་གྱི་བསྐྱབ་གཞི། དབ་གཉིས་པ།

圣经故事选集 英藏对照学习教程

2

# Contents

<b>Introduction</b> .....	<b>5</b>
<b>Chapters</b>	
<b>1. The Flood (part 1)</b> .....	<b>9</b>
Genesis (འགོད་པ། 创世纪) 6:5-22; 7:11-12; 17-24	
<b>2. The Flood (part 2)</b> .....	<b>18</b>
Genesis (འགོད་པ། 创世纪) 8:1-5; 13-22; 9:1-13	
<b>3. Languages</b> .....	<b>26</b>
Genesis (འགོད་པ། 创世纪) 11:1-9	
<b>4. God Enters the World as a Man</b> .....	<b>32</b>
John (ཡོ་ཏ་ནཱ། 约翰福音) 1:1-18	
<b>5. Jesus is Tempted</b> .....	<b>39</b>
Luke (ལུ་ཀླ། 路加福音) 4:1-15	
<b>6. A Demon Possessed Man</b> .....	<b>47</b>
Luke (ལུ་ཀླ། 路加福音) 8:26-39	
<b>7. The Sermon on the Mount</b> .....	<b>54</b>
Luke (ལུ་ཀླ། 路加福音) 6:20-49	
<b>8. The Loving Father</b> .....	<b>65</b>
Luke (ལུ་ཀླ། 路加福音) 15:11-32	
<b>9. The Good Neighbor</b> .....	<b>74</b>
Luke (ལུ་ཀླ། 路加福音) 10:25-37	
<b>10. The Way, the Truth and the Life</b> .....	<b>82</b>
John (ཡོ་ཏ་ནཱ། 约翰福音) 14:1-14	
<b>11. The Farmer and The Seed</b> .....	<b>89</b>
Mark (མར་ཀླ། 马可福音) 4:1-11, 13-20	
<b>12. Jesus Ascends into Heaven</b> .....	<b>97</b>
Acts (མཛད་པ། 使徒行传) 1:1-11	
<b>13. The Holy Spirit Comes</b> .....	<b>104</b>
Acts (མཛད་པ། 使徒行传) 2:1-8;14-24; 36-39	
<b>14. Live by the Holy Spirit's Power</b> .....	<b>113</b>
Galatians (ག་ལད་ཡུ་པ། 加拉太书) 5:16-26	

Stories from the Bible, Book 2  
དམ་པའི་གསུང་རབ་ལས་བརྒྱུད་པའི་སྐྱེས་གཏམ། དེབ་གཉིས་པ།  
英藏对照学习教程，第二册



[www.gsungrab.org](http://www.gsungrab.org) / [contact@gsungrab.org](mailto:contact@gsungrab.org)

<b>15. Jesus Teaches About Prayer</b> .....	<b>120</b>
Luke (ལུ་ཀློག་པའི་ལཱ་ཤི་ལོ་ལོ་ལོ་) 11:1-13	
<b>16. Dealing with Worry</b> .....	<b>128</b>
Luke (ལུ་ཀློག་པའི་ལཱ་ཤི་ལོ་ལོ་ལོ་) 12:22-34	
<b>17. Looking into the Future</b> .....	<b>135</b>
Luke (ལུ་ཀློག་པའི་ལཱ་ཤི་ལོ་ལོ་ལོ་) 21:5-24	
<b>18. More insight into the Future</b> .....	<b>143</b>
Luke (ལུ་ཀློག་པའི་ལཱ་ཤི་ལོ་ལོ་ལོ་) 21:25-37	
<b>19. Trials and Temptations</b> .....	<b>151</b>
James (ཡཱ་ཤི་ལོ་ལོ་ལོ་) 1:2-18	
<b>20. Faith and Works: What's the Relationship?</b> .....	<b>158</b>
James (ཡཱ་ཤི་ལོ་ལོ་ལོ་) 1:19-27 ; 2:14-19; 3:13-18	
<b>21. Nothing Can Separate us From God's Love</b> .....	<b>168</b>
Romans (རྩི་ལོ་ལོ་ལོ་) 8:18-39	
 <i>Epilogue</i> .....	 <b>178</b>
<i>Books of the Bible these readings are taken from</i> .....	<b>180</b>
<i>Map</i> .....	<b>183</b>
<i>Glossary of Technical Terms</i> .....	<b>184</b>

## Introduction

This textbook is designed specifically to help Tibetans with English language learning. It is targeted for learners at an intermediate English level and based on selected texts from the Bible. The intent in choosing these specific texts is to assist the learners in understanding key concepts of the Christian worldview. Each lesson contains a selected reading from the Bible in both English and Tibetan. However, please note that these are NOT direct translations, neither from English into Tibetan nor from Tibetan into English. The English translation of the Bible used in this textbook is the New International Readers Version (NIRV). The Tibetan translation of the Bible is taken from the new Central Tibetan version. The English selections of the Bible also have audio sound recordings. These mp3 files are on the CD-Rom included in this book or can be downloaded from the website at: [www.gsungrab.org/en/audio.html](http://www.gsungrab.org/en/audio.html)

Although this textbook can be used as an individual study tool for learning English, it was designed to be used with a language helper who can interact with the learner in discussing the “Beyond the Text” questions found in each chapter. As such, the textbook lends itself easily for use in language exchanges between students of Tibetan and English, as well as a resource for those wishing to study the Bible with Tibetans in English. If you would like to learn more about the Bible itself, please download the pdf entitled “Exploring the Bible with Tibetans” from this link [www.gsungrab.org/en/intro.html](http://www.gsungrab.org/en/intro.html)

We hope you enjoy this book and find it beneficial in both improving your English and learning about some of the foundational teachings of the Christian faith. The Bible is God’s Word – the true and holy words of the Creator of the Universe.

May God bless you as you study His Word!

[www.gsungrab.org](http://www.gsungrab.org)

# དོ་སྐྱོད་མདོར་བསྡུས།

བསྐྱབ་གཞི་འདི་ནི་འབྲིང་རིམ་དབྱིན་ཡིག་གི་ཚུ་ཚད་ལྡན་པའི་བོད་རིགས་ཀྱི་སློབ་ཁྲུང་མ་ལ་དམིགས་ནས་གསུང་རབ་ནང་གི་ཡིག་རྒྱུང་ལེགས་འདེམས་བྱས་པ་ཞིག་ཡིན། འདིའི་ནང་གི་ཡིག་རྒྱུང་རྣམས་ཡོངས་རྫོགས་དམ་པའི་གསུང་རབ་ལས་བཏུས་ཤིང་གྲོག་པ་པོ་ཚོས་དབྱིན་ཡིག་སློབ་སྦྱོང་དང་སྒྲགས་ཡེ་བྱའི་ཚོས་ལུགས་པ་རྣམས་ཀྱི་འཛིན་ཏེན་ལ་འཛིན་པའི་ཚུ་བའི་ལྷ་ཚུལ་ཤེས་ཏེ་གསུང་ཡོང་ཕྱིར་ཡིན། སློབ་ཚན་རེར་གསུང་རབ་ནས་དྲངས་པའི་ལེགས་འདེམས་ལྷ་གྲོག་དབྱིན་བོད་གཉིས་ཀ་ནས་བཀོད་ཡོད། གང་ལྟར་ན་ཡང་རེས་པར་དོ་ནན་བྱ་དགོས་པ་ལ་དབྱིན་ཡིག་ནས་བོད་ཡིག་དང་བོད་ཡིག་ནས་དབྱིན་ཡིག་ཏུ་བར་དོན་ཐད་ཀར་བསྐྱར་བ་མེད། དེ་ལ་དོ་སྐྱོད་པའི་དབྱིན་ཡིག་གི་ཁུངས་འདྲེན་གསུང་རབ་ནི་རྒྱལ་སྤྱིའི་གྲོག་པ་པོའི་དཔར་གཞི་གསར་མ་(NIrV) དང་། བོད་ཡིག་གི་གསུང་རབ་བསྐྱར་མ་ནི་དབུས་གཙང་དཔར་གཞི་གསར་མ་ཏེ་དམ་པའི་གསུང་རབ་འཛམ་གླིང་མཐའ་གུ་གསལ་བའི་འོད་སྣང་ཞེས་བྱ་བ་སྦྱད་ཡོད། དབྱིན་ཡིག་གི་གསུང་རབ་བཏུས་མ་ལ་ mp3 ཀྱི་ཉན་ཆས་སྒྲིག་སྦྱོར་ཡང་བྱས་ཡོད། དེ་རྣམས་བསྐྱབ་གཞིའི་ཁ་སློན་གྱི་CD ནས་གསན་པ་དང་ཡང་ན་ཐད་ཀར་འཛོལ་དུ་ཚོགས་བརྒྱུད་ནས་ཕབ་ལེན་བྱས་ནས་འཛོགས་

[www.gsungrab.org/bo/audio.html](http://www.gsungrab.org/bo/audio.html)

བསྐྱབ་གཞི་འདི་བོད་རིགས་གྲོག་པ་པོ་རྣམས་དབྱིན་ཡིག་ཁེར་རྒྱུང་སློབ་སྦྱོང་བྱེད་པ་དང་ཡང་ན་བོད་དབྱིན་སྐད་གཉིས་ཕན་ཚུན་སྦྲེལ་རེས་བྱེད་པ། དེ་བཞིན་དབྱིན་སྐད་ཐོག་ནས་གསུང་རབ་སློབ་གཉེས་གནང་བར་སློབ་པའི་བོད་རིགས་ཚོས་དབེ་ཁུངས་ཏེ་གསུང་ཕྱིར་མཁོ་འདོན་བྱས། ང་ཚོས་དཔེ་དེ་ལ་དོ་སྐྱོད་སྐྱོད་དབྱིན་ཡིག་སློབ་སྦྱོང་ལ་སྒྲུལ་དེད་དང་ཡེ་བྱའི་ཚོས་ལུགས་ཀྱི་ཚུ་དོན་རྣམས་ཤེས་ཏེ་གསུང་ཡོང་རྒྱུར་སྐྱབ་པའི་རེ་བ་ཐལ་མོ་སླིང་ཁར་སྐྱར་ནས་ལྷ་རྒྱུ་ཡིན།

གལ་ཏེ་སྐྱོད་ཀྱིས་གསུང་རབ་སློབ་དེ་བས་མང་བ་མཁྱེན་འདོད་གནང་ན། དྲ་ཚོགས་

[www.gsungrab.org/bo/intro.html](http://www.gsungrab.org/bo/intro.html) ལས་ pdf རྣམ་ཅན་གྱི་ཡིག་ཆའི་ཐོག་ནས་ཡེ་བྱའི་ཚོས་ལུགས་ཀྱི་དམ་པའི་གསུང་རབ་སློབ་དོ་སྐྱོད་བཞུགས་སོ་ཞེས་པ་ཕབ་ལེན་

གནང་རོགས། རེད་ཚོས་སྐྱོད་ཉིད་ལྷ་དེ་ལ་འདིར་མཉེས་པོ་དང་འདིས་སྐྱོད་ཀྱི་དབྱིན་ཡིག་ཚུ་ཚད་གོང་མཐོར་གཏོང་བ། ཡེ་བྱའི་ཚོས་ལུགས་ཀྱི་དང་པའི་ཚུ་དོན་འགའ་སློབ་སྦྱོང་དང་རྒྱས་མངའ་ཡོང་རྒྱ་གཉིས་ཀར་ཕན་འབྲས་ཐོན་པའི་རེ་བ་བཅངས་བཞིན་ཡོད། དམ་པའི་གསུང་རབ་ནི་དགོན་མཚོག་གི་བཀའ་ཡིན་ལ། འཛིན་ཏེན་བཀོད་པ་པོའི་དྲང་བདེན་དང་དམ་པའི་བཀའ་ཡང་ཡིན།

ཁྱེད་ཉིད་སློབ་དེ་ལ་འདི་སློབ་གཉེས་བྱེད་པའི་བརྒྱུད་རིམ་ནང་དགོན་མཚོག་གིས་བྱིན་རྒྱལ་ས་གནང་བར་ཤོག་ཅིག།

[www.gsungrab.org](http://www.gsungrab.org)

## 简介:

本教程旨在帮助具有初、中级英语水平藏族读者进一步提高英语水平。书中中文本均选自《圣经》，这些文本可以帮助读者熟悉并理解基督信仰的基本概念。每篇课文都包括英文和藏文两种文本。《圣经》英译经文均出自新国际读者版(NIrV)，藏译经文均出自新卫藏版，在学习时要注意，它们并非严格意义上的对译。英译经文配有mp3格式录音，读者可从书中附带的CD中选听，也可在我们的网站上直接下载 [www.gsungrab.org/zh/audio.html](http://www.gsungrab.org/zh/audio.html)

尽管本教程可为藏族读者单独学习英语提供便利，但在学习过程中如能找到合适的指导者，就每章后的思考题进行深入的讨论，则学习效果会更好。因此本书非常适合在藏英双语交换学习中使用。同时，本书也为有志与藏族人一同进行英文《圣经》研读的人士提供了便利。如果你想对《圣经》有更多的了解，请从[www.gsungrab.org/zh/intro.html](http://www.gsungrab.org/zh/intro.html) pdf文件“《圣经》导读藏汉对照读物”

衷心希望本书在英语学习和了解基督教理方面对你都有所裨益。圣经是上帝的话语——宇宙创造者的真实而神圣的话语。

当你探寻主道时，上帝必赐福于你！

[www.gsungrab.org](http://www.gsungrab.org)

# Chapter 1

## The Flood (part 1)

---

### *Pre-Reading*

- 1. How would you feel if you made something “very good” and then someone else spoiled or ruined it?
- 2. Does someone who makes something have the right to destroy what they made?
- 3. In your opinion are people mostly good but sometimes bad or mostly bad but sometimes good?

Note: In the Bible there are many names for God. Some of them we have seen in Book One and some we will see in Book Two. “Lord” is one of the names of God.

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

## Vocabulary Definitions

### Exercise 1:

In the parenthesis next to the following vocabulary words, write the letter of its corresponding definition. In addition, write the Tibetan translation of the vocabulary word in the space to the right. One has been done for you. Use a dictionary to look-up words you don't know.

- |                     |                     |  |
|---------------------|---------------------|--|
| 1. to wipe out ( )  | _____               | A. responsibility for something wrong that was done    |
| 2. to direct ( )    | _____               | B. a kind of tree                                      |
| 3. blame ( )        | _____               | C. to cause something to end; to ruin or break         |
| 4. covenant ( )     | _____               | D. to focus on, centre one's attention on              |
| 5. tar ( )          | _____               | E. lots of water covering ground that's usually dry    |
| 6. cypress ( )      | _____               | F. the floor of a boat or ship                         |
| 7. harmful ( )      | _____               | G. to make someone happy or satisfied                  |
| 8. spring ( )       | _____               | H. to destroy completely, to get rid of all            |
| 9. to destroy ( C ) | <u>མེད་པ་བཟོ་བ་</u> | I. to put things somewhere for use later               |
| 10. to burst ( )    | _____               | J. the place where water comes from the ground         |
| 11. deck ( )        | _____               | K. a sticky, thick black liquid made from wood or peat |
| 12. flood ( )       | _____               | L. something likely to be damaging or hurtful          |
| 13. to store ( )    | _____               | M. to break open in a sudden or violent way            |
| 14. to please ( )   | _____               | N. a promise, a binding agreement, a contract          |

## Text: Genesis 6:5-22; 7:11-12; and 17-24

### Genesis 6:5-22

**6**<sup>5</sup> The Lord saw how bad the sins of man had become on the earth. All of the thoughts in his heart were always directed only toward what was evil. <sup>6</sup> The Lord was very sad that he had made man on the earth. His heart was filled with pain. <sup>7</sup> So the Lord said, "I created man on the earth. But I will wipe them out. I will destroy people and animals alike. I will also destroy the creatures that move along the ground and the birds of the air. I am very sad that I have made man."

<sup>8</sup> But the Lord was pleased with Noah.

<sup>9</sup> Here is the story of Noah.

Noah was a godly man. He was without blame among the people of his time. He walked with God. <sup>10</sup> Noah had three sons. Their names were Shem, Ham and Japheth.

<sup>11</sup> The earth was very sinful in God's eyes. It was full of mean and harmful acts.

<sup>12</sup> God saw how sinful the earth had become. All of the people on earth were leading very sinful lives.

<sup>13</sup> So God said to Noah, "I am going to put an end to all people. They have filled the earth with their harmful acts. You can be sure that I am going to destroy both them and the earth.

<sup>14</sup> "So make yourself an ark out of cypress wood. Make rooms in it. Cover it with tar inside and out. <sup>15</sup> Here is how I want you to build it. The ark has to be 450 feet long. It has to be 75 feet wide and 45 feet high. <sup>16</sup> Make a roof for it. Leave the sides of the ark open a foot and a half from the top. Put a door in one side of the ark. Make lower, middle and upper decks.

<sup>17</sup> "I am going to bring a flood on the earth. It will destroy all life under the sky. It will destroy every living creature that breathes. Everything on earth will die.

<sup>18</sup> "But I will make my covenant with you. You will enter the ark. Your sons and your wife and your sons' wives will enter it with you.

<sup>19</sup> "Bring two of every living thing into the ark. Bring male and female of them into it. They will be kept alive with you. <sup>20</sup> Two of every kind of bird will come to you. Two of every kind of animal will come to you. And two of every kind of creature that moves along the ground will come to you. All of them will be kept alive with you.

<sup>21</sup> "Take every kind of food that you will need. Store it away. It will be food for you and for them."

<sup>22</sup> Noah did everything exactly as God commanded him.

**Genesis 7:11-12**

7 <sup>11</sup> Noah was 600 years old. It was the 17th day of the second month of the year. On that day all of the springs at the bottom of the oceans burst open. God opened the windows of the skies. <sup>12</sup> Rain fell on the earth for 40 days and 40 nights.

**Genesis 7:17-24**

<sup>17</sup> For 40 days the flood kept coming on the earth. As the waters rose higher, they lifted the ark high above the earth. <sup>18</sup> The waters rose higher and higher on the earth. And the ark floated on the water.

<sup>19</sup> The waters rose on the earth until all of the high mountains under the entire sky were covered. <sup>20</sup> The waters continued to rise until they covered the mountains by more than 20 feet.

<sup>21</sup> Every living thing that moved on the earth died. The birds, the livestock and the wild animals died. All of the creatures that fill the earth also died. And so did every human being. <sup>22</sup> Everything on dry land that had the breath of life in it died. <sup>23</sup> Every living thing on the earth was wiped out. People and animals were destroyed. The creatures that move along the ground and the birds of the air were wiped out. Everything was destroyed from the earth. Only Noah and those who were with him in the ark were left.

<sup>24</sup> The waters flooded the earth for 150 days.

*New International Reader's Version® (NIRV®, 1996)*

**འགོད་པ། 6:5-22; 7:11-12; 17-24    創世紀 6:5-22, 7:11-12; 17-24**

**6:5-22**

6 <sup>5</sup> ཡུ་ཤེ་དགོན་མཚོག་གིས་འཛིག་རྟེན་གྱི་མིའི་རིགས་ཀྱི་སྐྱོད་པ་ཚོ་ལས་ཆེན་པོ་ཡོད་པ་དང་། དེ་ཚོའི་བསམ་པ་ཐམས་ཅད་རྟག་ཏུ་འཛིན་པ་ཞིན་ཡོད་པ་གཟིགས་ཏེ། <sup>6</sup> ཁོང་གིས་མིའི་རིགས་མཛད་པའི་ཕྱག་ལས་ལ་འགྲོད་པ་དང་ཐུགས་ཤིན་ཏུ་སྐྱོ་ནས་ <sup>7</sup> “མིའི་རིགས་དང་དུད་འགོ་སློག་ཆགས་འབྲུ་སྲིན། བཟ་འའི་བྱ་བྱིའུ་སོགས་ཐམས་ཅད་ངས་བཟོས་པས། ད་ངའི་སེམས་ཤིན་ཏུ་འགྲོད་པའི་རྒྱུ་གྱིས་དེ་ཚོ་ཚང་མ་འཛིག་རྟེན་ནས་ངས་མེད་པ་བཟོ་བར་བྱ་” ཞེས་གསུངས། <sup>8</sup> འོན་ཀྱང་ཡུ་ཤེ་དགོན་མཚོག་ནི་ཡུ་ཤེ་ཕྱགས་དགེས། <sup>9</sup> འདི་ནི་ཡའི་ལོ་རྒྱུས་ཡིན་ཏེ། རྟོ་ཨ་ནི་མི་སེམས་དྲང་བོ་ཞིག་ཡིན་པ་དང་། དེའི་དུས་སུ་ཡོད་པའི་མིའི་ནང་ནས་ཁོང་གཅིག་སུ་སྐྱོན་མེད་ཡིན། དགོན་མཚོག་དང་མཉམ་དུ་འགོགས་སོ། <sup>10</sup> རྟོ་ཨ་ལ་སུ་གསུམ་ཡོད་དེ། ཁོ་ཚོའི་མིང་གིས་དང་ཉམ་དང་ཡུ་ཤེད་བཅས་ཡིན། <sup>11</sup> ཡང་དགོན་མཚོག་གི་སྐུན་སྲུང་མིའི་རིགས་ནི་ཡོངས་སུ་ངན་སུལ་དུ་སྐྱུར་ཏེ། དག་སྐྱོད་གང་སར་བྱུང་ཡོད་པ་དང་། <sup>12</sup> ཡང་མིའི་རིགས་ཀྱིས་སྐྱོད་པ་ངན་པ་བྱས་

པས། འཇམ་གླིང་ཡོངས་སུ་ལས་ངན་གྱིས་གང་ནས་ཡོད་པ་དགོན་མཚོག་གིས་གཟིགས་ཏེ། <sup>13</sup> ཁོང་གིས་ནོ་ཨ་ལ་“མིའི་རིགས་ཀྱིས་བྱས་པའི་ལས་ངན་གྱི་སྐྱོན་ནས་དག་སྐྱོད་གང་སར་བྱུང་ཡོད་པས། རྟོ་ཨ་ཤིག་ངས་མིའི་རིགས་ཡོངས་ཚོགས་འཛིག་རྟེན་དང་མཉམ་དུ་མེད་པར་བྱ། <sup>14</sup> བྱིད་རང་དང་བྱིད་ཀྱི་ནང་མིའི་ཚེད་དུ་ཁང་མིག་ཡོད་པའི་ཤིང་གི་གྲུ་ཆེན་པོ་ཞིག་བཟོས་དང་། བྱི་ནང་གཉིས་ཀར་སྐྱུ་མ་ནག་སྐྱུ་ཤིག་ <sup>15</sup> བཟོ་སྟངས་ནི་གྲུའི་རིང་ཚད་ནི་སྤྲི་བརྒྱ་དང་སུམ་ཅུ། ཞེང་ཚད་སྤྲི་ཉི་ལུ་རྩ་གཉིས་དང་། མཐོ་ཚད་སྤྲི་བཅུ་གསུམ་ཡོད་པ་ཞིག་བཟོས་ཤིག་ <sup>16</sup> ཡང་གྲུ་ལ་ཐོག་ཅིག་བཀའ་སྟེ། ཐོག་དང་ཅིག་པའི་བར་ལ་སྤྲི་བྱེད་ཀ་བར་སྟོང་པ་འཛོག་གྲུའི་ནང་ཐོག་བཅུ་གསུམ་སྟོད་སྟེད་བར་གསུམ་བཟོས་ནས་གྲུའི་ལོགས་སུ་སྐྱོ་ཞིག་བཟོས། <sup>17</sup> རྟོ་ཨ་ཤིག་འཛིག་རྟེན་ནང་སློག་གི་དབུགས་དང་ལྷན་པའི་སེམས་ཅན་ཐམས་ཅད་མེད་པར་བྱེད་པའི་བྱིར་ངས་ལུ་ལོག་ཆེན་པོ་ཞིག་བཟོ་བར་བྱ། <sup>18</sup> འོན་ཀྱང་བྱིད་རང་དང་ཁ་ཚད་བྱེད་རྒྱ་ཡིན། བྱིད་དང་བྱིད་ཀྱི་བཟའ་ཚེ་དང་། བྱིད་ཀྱི་སུ་གསུམ་དང་དེ་ཚོའི་བཟའ་ཚེ་རྣམས་གྲུའི་ནང་འཇུག་པར་བྱ། <sup>19-20</sup> ཡང་དེ་ཚོ་གསོན་པོར་གནས་པའི་བྱིར་སློག་ཆགས་ཀྱི་རིགས་ཐམས་ཅད་དང་། བྱ་བྱིའུའི་རིགས་ཐམས་ཅད་ཀྱི་ནང་ནས་པོ་མོ་གཉིས་གཉིས་བྱིད་མཉམ་དུ་གྲུའི་ནང་བྱིད་ཅིག་ <sup>21</sup> ཡང་དེ་ཚོའི་དོན་ལ་ཟས་སྤྲོ་ཚོགས་དང་། བྱིད་ཚོའི་བྱིར་ཡང་ཁ་ཟས་བསལ་ནས་བྱིད་ཞིག་” ཅེས་བཀའ་གནང་། <sup>22</sup> དགོན་མཚོག་གི་བཀའ་གནང་བ་ལྟར་ནི་ཡུ་ཤེ་ལ་སྐྱུ་བས་པར་བྱས་སོ།

**7:11-12**

7 <sup>11</sup> རྟོ་ཨ་དགུང་ལོ་དྲུག་བརྒྱ་ལྔ་བ་གཉིས་པའི་ཚེས་བཅུ་བདུན་ལོན་པའི་ཉིན་མོ་དེ་རང་ལ་རྒྱ་མཚོ་ཆེན་པོའི་གཉིང་གི་རྒྱ་མིག་ཐམས་ཅད་དོལ་བ་དང་། བཟ་མའའི་རྒྱའི་སྐྱོ་ཚང་མ་ཡང་བྱ། <sup>12</sup> དེ་ནས་ཉིན་མཚན་བཞི་བཅུའི་བར་དུ་ཆར་འབབ་རྒྱུའི་ཆར་པ་འགོ་བཅུ་གསུམ།

**7:17-24**

<sup>17</sup> ཡང་ཉི་མ་བཞི་བཅུའི་བར་ལུ་ལོག་ཆེན་པོ་བྱུང་བའི་རྒྱུ་གྱིས་རྒྱ་ཆུ་རྒྱས་ཏེ་གཉིང་རིང་པོ་བྱུང་བས་གྲུ་རྒྱུའི་སྐང་ལ་འཕྱོ། <sup>18</sup> རྒྱ་ཤིན་ཏུ་རྒྱས་པས་རྒྱ་ཁ་མཐོ་དུ་མཐོ་དུ་བྱིན་ཏེ་གྲུ་ལུ་མཐུད་རྒྱུའི་སྤེང་ལ་གཡེངས། <sup>19</sup> ཡང་རྒྱ་དེ་ཤིན་ཏུ་གཉིང་རིང་བ་དང་རྒྱ་ཆེ་བ་བྱུང་བས། བཟ་མའའི་ལོག་རྒྱ་ཡོད་པའི་རི་པོ་མཐོན་པོ་ཀུན་རྒྱུའི་ནང་དེ་མ། <sup>20</sup> རྒྱ་དེ་རི་པོའི་ཕྱེ་ལས་སྤྲི་བདུན་ཅུ་མ་གྱི་མཐོན་པོར་སྤོངས། <sup>21</sup> ཡང་ས་ལ་ཡོད་པའི་དུད་འགོ་ཚང་མ་དང་། སློག་ཆགས་འབྲུ་སྲིན། གཅན་གཟན། བྱ་བྱིའུ་མི་ཐམས་ཅད་རྒྱུའི་ནང་དུ་ཤི་སྟེ། <sup>22</sup> མདོར་ན་སྐྱུ་མ་ལ་ཡོད་པའི་སློག་གི་དབུགས་དང་ལྷན་པའི་སེམས་ཅན་ཐམས་ཅད་གིའོ། <sup>23</sup> ས་སྤེང་ལ་ཡོད་པའི་དུད་འགོ་དང་བྱ་བྱིའུ་ལ་སོགས་པའི་སེམས་ཅན་ཐམས་ཅད་དང་། མིའི་རིགས་ཀུན་ལ་ཡུ་ཤེ་དགོན་མཚོག་གིས་མེད་པར་མཛད། འོན་ཀྱང་གྲུའི་ནང་ནི་ཡུ་ཤེ་དང་མཉམ་དུ་ཡོད་པ་ཚང་མ་གསོན་པོར་གནས། <sup>24</sup> ཡང་ཉི་མ་བརྒྱ་དང་ལྔ་བཅུ་བར་སའི་སྤེང་དུ་རྒྱ་རྒྱས་སོ།

## Vocabulary Practice

### Exercise 2:

Use the vocabulary words provided to complete the following sentences taken from the text above (change the form as necessary). Try and do them from memory (without looking at the text).

flood	blame	covenant	tar	to wipe out	cypress
harmful	springs	to destroy	to burst	to direct	deck
to store	to please				

1. During the time of Noah, the people's thoughts were \_\_\_\_\_ only toward what was evil.
2. God created man on the earth but he said he would \_\_\_\_\_ out those evil people.
3. Although there were many evil people, the Lord was \_\_\_\_\_ with Noah.
4. Noah was a godly man and was without \_\_\_\_\_.
5. God said the people had filled the earth with their \_\_\_\_\_ acts.
6. God told Noah to make the ark out of \_\_\_\_\_ wood.
7. God told Noah to cover the ark with \_\_\_\_\_ inside and out.
8. Noah made lower, middle and upper \_\_\_\_\_ for the ark.
9. God said he would make a \_\_\_\_\_ with Noah and would save him and his family in the ark.
10. Noah was told to take every kind of food he would need and to \_\_\_\_\_ it away.
11. On the day Noah entered the ark, all the \_\_\_\_\_ at the bottom of the oceans \_\_\_\_\_ open.
12. For 40 days the \_\_\_\_\_ kept coming on the earth.
13. Every living thing on the earth was wiped out. People and animals were \_\_\_\_\_.

### Exercise 3:

Practice every day usage of these words by using the vocabulary words in the box to complete the following sentences (change the form as necessary).

to wipe out	to direct	blame	covenant	tar	cypress
harmful	to please	springs	to destroy	to burst	deck
flood	to store				

1. \_\_\_\_\_ trees are very useful because they produce a good kind of wood.
2. The lack of rain \_\_\_\_\_ half the crops.
3. She \_\_\_\_\_ the whole project and it was a complete success. She seems like a good leader.
4. The dam had small cracks, and after the heavy rain, it \_\_\_\_\_ open and water came rushing down the valley.
5. My parents were so \_\_\_\_\_ when I told them how well I did in that difficult exam, that they took me out to dinner to celebrate.
6. There is a natural \_\_\_\_\_ at the top of that valley where ice-cold, fresh water comes out of a large boulder.
7. In the summer we \_\_\_\_\_ our warm winter coats in that metal box.
8. When we were playing my brother broke the window, but I got the \_\_\_\_\_ for it.
9. Those sailors sometimes wash the \_\_\_\_\_ of that boat as part of their work.
10. When two people make a \_\_\_\_\_ with each other, it is like a strong promise that should never be broken.
11. The company was using chemicals which were \_\_\_\_\_ to the environment, and the plants and animals in that area all died.
12. The workers used hot black \_\_\_\_\_ in making those highways.
13. Have you heard the news? There was a terrible \_\_\_\_\_ and many people died.
14. Before we build a new dormitory we will have to \_\_\_\_\_ the old one to make space.



## Comprehension Questions

1. What is the problem that God sees on earth in this text?
2. How did God feel? What did He plan to do?
3. What do you know about Noah from this text?
4. How many levels (floors) were on the ark?
5. How many people survived the flood (continued to live, did not die)?
6. Besides people and animals, what else needed to be put on the ark?
7. Where did the water that flooded the earth come from?
8. How many days did the waters pour onto the earth?
9. How many days before land could be seen again?

## Deeper Understanding

1. What animals that were not in the ark survived the flood?
2. Why were there two of every kind of animal?
3. Why might it have been necessary for the flood to remain for 150 days?

## Beyond the Text

1. Why was it important to save the animals?
2. Why was it important to note that the water was 20 feet above the highest mountain?
3. How might this story explain fossils from an ocean being found in the Himalayas?
4. After creating the world, God said that it was good. What happened?
5. What do you think the text means by, “Noah walked with God”?
6. Do you think Noah’s children, and grandchildren, and great-grandchildren will be different from the people that God destroyed in the flood?

## Answers

### Exercise 1:

1. H
2. D
3. A
4. N
5. K
6. B
7. L
8. J
9. C
10. M
11. F
12. E
13. I
14. G

### Exercise 2:

1. directed
2. wipe
3. pleased
4. blame
5. harmful
6. cypress
7. tar
8. decks
9. covenant
10. store
11. springs; burst
12. floods
13. destroyed

### Comprehension Questions:

1. Man’s behavior had become very bad. His every thought was turned toward evil.
2. (a) God was sad. His heart was full of pain.  
(b) He planned to destroy the people and the animals on the earth.
3. We know the following about Noah:
  - 1) He pleased God;
  - 2) He was a godly man;
  - 3) He walked with God; and
  - 4) He had three sons.
4. Three decks.
5. Eight people (Noah, his wife, his three sons, and his sons’ wives).
6. Food for both the people and the animals.
7. Deep springs in the ocean and from the sky.
8. Forty days and forty nights.
9. One-hundred and fifty days.

### Deeper Understanding:

1. Those that lived in the water.
2. In order to reproduce animals after their own kind.
3. To make sure that every living creature outside of the ark was destroyed.

# Chapter 2

## The Flood (part 2)

### Pre-Reading

1. Have you ever needed to stay inside your house for a whole day? A week? A month? How would you feel if you had to stay inside for a year?
2. Do you think animals are more afraid of humans or humans are more afraid of animals? Why?
3. Have you ever made a promise to someone and then given them something to show your sincerity? Explain.

### Vocabulary Definitions

#### Exercise 1:

In the parenthesis next to the following vocabulary words, write the letter of its corresponding definition. In addition, write the Tibetan translation of the vocabulary word in the space to the right. One has been done for you. Use a dictionary to look-up words you don't know.

- |                                    |                     |  |
|------------------------------------|---------------------|--|
| 1. covering ( )                    | _____               | A. something given (offered) as a gift                 |
| 2. to honor ( )                    | _____               | B. a wish that evil or misfortune will come            |
| 3. offering ( )                    | _____               | C. something laid over or around a thing               |
| 4. pleasant ( )                    | _____               | D. a bow or arc of colors in the sky due to rain & sun |
| 5. curse ( )                       | _____               | E. to show respect; to think of as having great worth  |
| 6. to hold someone accountable ( ) | _____               | F. to increase the number or quantity                  |
| 7. to multiply ( F )               | <u>མང་པོ་འབྲེལ་</u> | G. to require explanation and take responsibility for  |
| 8. rainbow ( )                     | _____               | H. pleasing; enjoyable; giving pleasure                |

*Text: Genesis 8:1-5; 13-22; and 9:1-13 (continued from Chapter 1)*

#### Genesis 8:1-5

<sup>1</sup> But God showed concern for Noah. He also showed concern for all of the wild animals and livestock that were with Noah in the ark.

So God sent a wind over the earth. And the waters began to go down. <sup>2</sup> The springs at the bottom of the oceans had been closed. The windows of the skies had been closed. And the rain had stopped falling from the sky.

<sup>3</sup> The water continued to go down from the earth. At the end of the 150 days the water had gone down. <sup>4</sup> On the 17th day of the seventh month, the ark came to rest on the mountains of Ararat. <sup>5</sup> The waters continued to go down until the tenth month. On the first day of the month, the tops of the mountains could be seen.

#### Genesis 8:13-22

<sup>13</sup> It was the first day of the first month of Noah's 601st year. The water had dried up from the earth. Then Noah removed the covering from the ark. He saw that the surface of the ground was dry. <sup>14</sup> By the 27th day of the second month the earth was completely dry.

<sup>15</sup> Then God said to Noah, <sup>16</sup> "Come out of the ark. Bring your wife and your sons and their wives with you.

<sup>17</sup> "Bring out every kind of living thing that is with you. Bring the birds, the animals, and all of the creatures that move along the ground. Then they can multiply on the earth. They can have little ones and increase their numbers."

<sup>18</sup> So Noah came out of the ark. His sons and his wife and his sons' wives were with him. <sup>19</sup> All of the animals came out of the ark. The creatures that move along the ground also came out. So did all of the birds. Everything that moves on the earth came out of the ark. One kind after another came out.

<sup>20</sup> Then Noah built an altar to honor the Lord. He took some of all of the "clean" animals and birds. He sacrificed burnt offerings to the Lord on the altar.

<sup>21</sup> Their smell was pleasant to the Lord. He said to himself, "I will never put a curse on the ground again because of man. I will not do it even though his heart is always directed toward what is evil. His thoughts are evil from the time he is young. I will never destroy all living things again, as I have just done.

<sup>22</sup> "As long as the earth lasts, there will always be a time to plant and a time to gather the crops. As long as the earth lasts, there will always be cold and heat. There will always be summer and winter, day and night."

**Genesis 9:1-13**

<sup>1</sup> Then God gave his blessing to Noah and his sons. He said to them, “Have children and increase your numbers. Fill the earth.

<sup>2</sup> “All of the land animals will be afraid of you. All of the birds of the air will fear you. Every creature that moves along the ground will fear you. Every fish in the oceans will also be afraid of you. Every living thing is put under your control.

<sup>3</sup> “Everything that lives and moves will be food for you. I have already given you the green plants for food. Now I am giving you everything.

<sup>4</sup> “But you must not eat meat that still has blood in it. <sup>5</sup> You can be sure that I will hold someone accountable if you are murdered. I will even hold animals accountable if they kill you. I will also hold anyone accountable who murders another person.

<sup>6</sup> “Anyone who murders man will be killed by man. That is because I have made man in my own likeness.

<sup>7</sup> “Have children and increase your numbers. Multiply on the earth and increase your numbers on it.”

<sup>8</sup> Then God spoke to Noah and to his sons who were with him. He said, <sup>9</sup> “I am now making my covenant with you and with all of your children who will be born after you. <sup>10</sup> I am making it also with every living thing that was with you in the ark. I am making my covenant with the birds, the livestock and all of the wild animals. I am making it with all of the creatures that came out of the ark with you. I am making it with every living thing on earth.

<sup>11</sup> “Here is my covenant that I am making with you. The waters of a flood will never destroy all life again. A flood will never destroy the earth again.”

<sup>12</sup> God continued, “My covenant is between me and you and every living thing with you. It is a covenant for all time to come.

“Here is the sign of the covenant I am making. <sup>13</sup> I have put my rainbow in the clouds. It will be the sign of the covenant between me and the earth.

*New International Reader’s Version® (NIRV®, 1996)*

**འགོད་པ། 8:1-5; 13-22; 9:1-13 创世纪 8:1-5; 13-22; 9:1-13**

**8:1-5**

8 <sup>1</sup> འོན་ཀྱང་དགོན་མཚོག་གིས་ད་དུང་ནོ་ཨ་དང་གུའི་ནང་ཡོད་པ་ཐམས་ཅད་ལ་དགོངས་པ་བཞེས་ཏེ། རྒྱུ་སྐྱེད་ལ་རྒྱུ་ཞིག་རྒྱགས་བཅུག་པ་དང་རྒྱུ་དམའ་བར་འགོ་བཞེན་ཡོད་པ་མ་ཟད། <sup>2</sup> རྒྱ་མཚོ་ཆེན་པོའི་གཏིང་གི་རྒྱ་མིག་དང་ནམ་མཁའི་རྒྱ་སྐྱོད་བཀག་ནས་དྲག་ཆར་ཆད། <sup>3</sup> ཉི་མ་བརྒྱ་དང་ལྷ་བཅུའི་རིང་ལ་རྒྱ་དལ་པོར་ཉུང་སྒྲིམ་ཏེ། <sup>4</sup> ལྷ་བ་བདུན་པའི་ཚོས་བཅུ་བདུན་གྱི་ཉིན་ཨུ་ར་རྟ་ཟེར་བའི་ཡུལ་གྱི་རི་རྒྱུད་ཀྱི་སྤྲོད་ལ་གྲུ་དེ་བསྟེན། <sup>5</sup> རྒྱ་དེ་དམའ་བར་འགོ་བཞེན་ཡོད་པ་དང་ལྷ་བ་བཅུ་པའི་ཉིན་དང་པོར་རིའི་ཕྱི་རྣམས་ཐོན།

**8:13-22**

<sup>13</sup> རོ་ཨ་དགུང་ལོ་དྲུག་བརྒྱ་བཅུ་མེད་གཅིག་གི་ལྷ་བ་དང་པོའི་ཚོས་གཅིག་ལོན་པའི་ཉིན་རྒྱ་དམའ་དུ་སྦྱིན་ཚར་ཡོད་པས། རོ་ཨས་གྲུའི་ཐོག་སྤྱོད་ཉེ་སྤྱོད་ས་བཞིར་བལྟས་ཤིང་ས་སྐྱམ་པོར་འགོ་བཞེན་ཡོད་པར་མཐོང་། <sup>14</sup> ལྷ་བ་གཉིས་པའི་ཚོས་ཉི་ཤུ་ཅུ་བདུན་གྱི་ཉིན་ས་ནི་ཡོངས་སུ་སྐྱམ་ཡོད། <sup>15</sup> དེ་ནས་དགོན་མཚོག་གིས་ནོ་ཨ་ལ་ <sup>16</sup> “ད་ལྟེན་རང་དང་ལྟེན་གྱི་བཟའ་ལྷ་ལྟེན་གྱི་བུ་གསུམ་དང་ཁོ་ཚོའི་བཟའ་ལྷ་རྣམས་གྲུ་ནས་ཐོན་ཞིག <sup>17</sup> ཡང་ལྟེན་ཚོ་མཉམ་དུ་ཡོད་པའི་དུད་འགོ་དང་སློག་ཆགས་འབྲུ་སྤོང་བྱ་བྱིའུ་ཐམས་ཅད་ཡང་གྲུ་ནས་སྦྱིར་བྱིད་ཅིག གང་ལགས་ཟེར་ན། དེ་ཚོ་རྒྱུད་དང་ལྷན་པར་གྲུར་ཏེ་མང་པོ་འཕེལ་ནས་ས་གཞི་འགོངས་པར་འགྱུར་བའི་སྦྱིར་ལོ་”ཞེས་བཀའ་གནང་། <sup>18</sup> རོ་ཨ་དང་ཁོང་གི་བཟའ་ལྷ་དང་། ཁོང་གི་བུ་གསུམ་དང་ཁོ་ཚོའི་བཟའ་ལྷ་རྣམས་གྲུའི་ནང་ནས་ཐོན་པ་དང་། <sup>19</sup> ཡང་དུད་འགོ་དང་སློག་ཆགས་འབྲུ་སྤོང་བྱ་བྱིའུ་ཐམས་ཅད་རང་རང་གི་རིགས་བཞིན་དུ་གྲུ་ནས་སྦྱིར་ཐོན། <sup>20</sup> དེ་ནས་རོ་ཨས་ལུ་མེ་དགོན་མཚོག་ལ་གྲུས་བཀའ་བྱེད་པའི་སྦྱིར་མཚོད་ཀྱི་ཞིག་བརྟེན་ནས་དུད་འགོ་དང་བྱ་བྱིའུ་ཐོན་ཞིང་ནས་རིགས་གཙང་བ་རེ་རེ་དཔེ་སྟེ་བསལ་ནས་མཚོད་ཀྱི་འཇམ་སྟེ་མཚོད་པ་ལུ་ལ། <sup>21</sup> མཚོད་པ་དེའི་དྲི་བསུང་ཞེས་པོ་བསྐྱམས་ནས་ལུ་མེ་དགོན་མཚོག་གིས་ཐོག་མ་མི་རྒྱུད་དུས་ནས་ཁོའི་བསམ་པ་དན་པ་ཡིན་པ་ཤེས། འོན་ཀྱང་ད་སྦྱིན་ཅད་མིའི་སེམས་ངན་པ་ཡིན་ཀྱང་ངས་ས་གཞིར་ཆད་པ་གཙོད་པར་མི་བྱ། ད་ལན་ངས་ཁོ་ཚོ་མེད་པ་བྱས་པ་ལྟར་ད་ནས་བཟུང་སེམས་ཅན་ཐམས་ཅད་རྒྱུན་གཙོད་པར་མི་བྱ།

<sup>22</sup> འཇིག་རྟེན་མཐའ་མའི་བར་དུ་ནི།  
ཞིང་ལ་སོན་འདེབས་སྟོན་ཐོག་སྤྱད།  
ཚ་གང་དབྱར་དགུན་དུས་བཞི་དང་།  
ཉིན་མཚན་ལ་སོགས་ཆད་མེད་ཡོད།

ཞེས་སྤྱགས་ལ་དགོངས་སོ།།

9:1-13

9 <sup>1</sup> ཡང་དགོན་མཚོག་གིས་ནོ་ཨ་དང་ཁོང་གི་བུ་རྒྱལ་ལ་བྱིན་རྒྱལ་གནང་སྟེ་“ལྷ་དང་ལྷན་པར་གྱུར་ནས་ཁྱེད་ཀྱི་བུ་རྒྱལ་རྒྱལ་ས་གནིར་འཕེལ་བར་གྱུར་ཞིག” <sup>2</sup> ཡང་སློབ་ཆགས་ཆེ་རྒྱུ་དང་། བྱ། ཉ་རིགས་ཐམས་ཅད་ཁྱེད་རྒྱལ་ལ་འཛིགས་ཡོང་། ངས་དེ་ཚོ་ཁྱེད་རྒྱལ་གྱི་དབང་འོག་ཏུ་འཇུག་པར་བྱ། <sup>3</sup> ཡང་ངས་ས་ལ་འགོ་བའི་སློབ་ཆགས་ཐམས་ཅད་ཁྱེད་ཚོ་ལ་ཁ་ཟས་སུ་སྟེར། སྲར་ངས་སྡོམ་སྲུང་པ་བཞིན་ད་ལྟ་ཐམས་ཅད་ཁྱེད་ཚོ་ལ་ཁ་ཟས་སུ་སྟེར་རོ། <sup>4</sup> འོན་ཀྱང་ཁྱེད་ཡོད་པའི་ཤ་མ་ཟ། དེ་ནི་སློབ་ཆགས་གི་ནང་དུ་ཡོད་པས་སོ། <sup>5</sup> གལ་སྲིད་མི་གཅིག་གིས་མི་གཞན་བསད་ན། ངས་ཁོ་ལ་ཆད་པ་ལོག་པར་འགྱུར། <sup>6</sup> དུད་འགོས་མི་བསད་ན། དེ་འད་གསོད་པར་འགྱུར། མི་ནི་དགོན་མཚོག་ཉིད་ཀྱི་དཔེ་ལྟར་བཟོས་ཡོད་པའི་རྒྱུ་ལྟར། ཁོ་བསད་མཁན་དེ་མི་གཞན་གྱིས་གསད་ཡོང་། <sup>7</sup> ཁྱེད་ཚོ་བུ་སྐྱུག་མང་པོ་སྐྱེས་ཤིང་ལྷ་དང་ལྷན་པར་གྱུར་ནས་ས་ལ་འཕེལ་བར་གྱུར་ཞིག” ཅེས་གསུངས། <sup>8</sup> ཡང་དགོན་མཚོག་གིས་ནོ་ཨ་དང་ཁོང་གི་བུ་རྒྱལ་ལ་ <sup>9</sup> “སྟོན་གིག ངས་ཁྱེད་དང་ཁྱེད་ཀྱི་བུ་རྒྱུད། <sup>10</sup> ཁྱེད་དང་མཉམ་དུ་ཡོད་པའི་བྱ་བྱིའུ་དང་། དུད་འགོ་སློབ་ཆགས་འབྲུ་སྲིན་གྱའི་ནང་ནས་ཐོན་པའི་སེམས་ཅན་ཐམས་ཅད་མཉམ་དུ་ཁ་ཆད་བྱེད་རྒྱུ་ཡིན། <sup>11</sup> ད་ཕྱིན་ཆད་རྒྱུ་ལོག་ཆེན་པོ་ཡིས་སེམས་ཅན་ཐམས་ཅད་མཉམ་དུ་མཉམ་པར་མི་འགྱུར་ཞིང་། ས་གཞི་ཡང་རྒྱུ་ལོག་གིས་མཉམ་པར་བཟོ་བར་མི་བྱ། འདི་ནི་ངས་ཁྱེད་ཚོ་དང་མཉམ་དུ་བྱེད་པའི་ཁ་ཆད་ཡིན་” ཞེས་གསུངས། <sup>12</sup> ཡང་དགོན་མཚོག་གིས་“ཁྱེད་དང་ཁྱེད་མཉམ་དུ་ཡོད་པའི་སེམས་ཅན་ཐམས་ཅད་དང་། མ་འོངས་པའི་རིགས་རྒྱུད་ཀྱི་མཉམ་དུ་ཁ་ཆད་བྱེད་པའི་རྟགས་ནི་འདི་ལྟར་ཡིན། <sup>13</sup> གནམ་གྱི་སྒྲིན་པའི་དཀྱིལ་ལ་ངས་འཇུག་ཞིག་བཙུགས་པ་དེ་ནི་འཛིག་རྟེན་དང་ངའི་བར་ལ་ཁ་ཆད་བྱས་པའི་རྟགས་ཡིན།

Vocabulary Practice

Exercise 2:

Use the vocabulary words provided to complete the following sentences taken from the text above (change the form as necessary). Try and do them from memory (without looking at the text).

rainbow offering to honor curse to hold someone accountable  
covering to multiply pleasant

1. After the water had dried from the earth, Noah removed the \_\_\_\_\_ from the ark.
2. After Noah, his family and the animals had come out of the ark, Noah built an altar to \_\_\_\_\_ the Lord.

3. On the altar, Noah sacrificed burnt \_\_\_\_\_ to the Lord.
4. The smell of the burnt offering was \_\_\_\_\_ to the Lord
5. The Lord said, “I will never put a \_\_\_\_\_ on the ground again because of man.”
6. The Lord wanted people to \_\_\_\_\_ on the earth and increase in numbers.
7. If someone is murdered, the Lord will \_\_\_\_\_ that person \_\_\_\_\_.
8. The Lord put a \_\_\_\_\_ in the clouds as a sign of the new covenant between God and the earth.

Exercise 3:

Practice every day usage of these words by using the vocabulary words in the box to complete the following sentences (change the form as necessary).

rainbow offering honor curse hold . . . accountable  
covering multiply pleasant

1. They \_\_\_\_\_ the leader \_\_\_\_\_ for the mistakes.
2. The pilgrims brought many different kinds of \_\_\_\_\_ to the temple.
3. The \_\_\_\_\_ spread across the valley from one mountain to the other.
4. What can you do to \_\_\_\_\_ your parents?
5. The villagers believe the land has a \_\_\_\_\_ on it because nothing grows there.
6. The journey was not very \_\_\_\_\_ because the road was rough and dusty.
7. The grass had a \_\_\_\_\_ of frost.
8. Your problems will quickly \_\_\_\_\_ if you don't try and solve them.

Comprehension Questions

1. Who did God show concern for?
2. How did the flood stop?
3. When did the ark come to rest on Mount Ararat?
4. At that time how old was Noah?
5. When did Noah and the animals finally come out of the ark?
6. What was the first thing Noah did after coming out of the ark?

7. What did God say he would never do again?
8. The Lord blessed Noah and gave him and his family a command. What was it?
9. What did God say the relationship between animals and people would be like?
10. What things did God say people were allowed to eat?
11. What was the sign of God's promise or covenant?

### *Deeper Understanding*

1. Why did Noah build an altar after getting out of the ark? Is this surprising?
2. What did God say would be the punishment of anyone who murders a person? Why are people valuable to God and meant to be protected, honored and loved?
3. Summarize God's covenant or promise with Noah and the people. Tell it in your own words.
4. What are some of the blessings God gives in chapter nine verses 1-13?

### *Beyond the Text*

1. God knew that people would continue to do evil things, sin and mess up, but he still promised not to destroy them in this way again. What does this teach you about God?
2. Put yourself in Noah's place. How do you think you would feel to have been one of the few people God saved?
3. If you could start everything from the beginning again what would you change? Noah got the chance to start the whole world over again. How would you change your actions if you were in his position?
4. What does this story (and the previous one) tell you about the seriousness of sin? What does it indicate about God's holiness?
5. God is holy and will judge people for the sin they have done. In this story he did, and he will do it again in the future (when Jesus returns to the earth). God saved some from the judgment of the flood by using the ark. What method has God offered us to be saved? How can we escape the judgment we deserve for the sins we have committed?

### *Answers*

#### **Exercise 1:**

1. C   2. E   3. A   4. H   5. B   6. G   7. F   8. D

#### **Exercise 2:**

1. covering   2. honor   3. offerings   4. pleasant  
5. curse   6. multiply   7. hold someone accountable   8. rainbow

#### **Exercise 3:**

1. held accountable   2. offerings   3. rainbow   4. honor  
5. curse   6. pleasant   7. covering   8. multiply

#### **Comprehension Questions:**

1. Noah and all the wild animals and livestock that were with him in the ark.
2. God sent a wind, the waters went down, the springs closed, the windows of the sky closed and the rain stopped.
3. On the seventeenth day of the seventh month.
4. 601 years old.
5. By the 27th day of the second month.
6. He built an altar to honor the Lord and sacrificed burnt offerings to the Lord on the altar.
7. "I will never put a curse on the ground again because of man. I will never destroy all living things again, as I have just done."
8. "Have children and increase your numbers. Fill the earth."
9. Animals will be afraid of people and every living thing is put under the control of man.
10. Every living thing would be food for people because God gave them everything.
11. A rainbow.

#### **Deeper Understanding:**

1. Perhaps this is a sign to show that the heart of man is still evil (vs 21) and therefore evil deeds will require punishment (death). However, it would also reflect God's plan to provide someone else to take the punishment for all people (Jesus himself being the final offering for punishment).
2. Anyone who murders a person would be killed. People are valuable and loved by God because people are made in his likeness.
3. From verse 1 to verse 13. Summarize in your own words.
4. He gave them the earth to use and to fill and take care of. He put them in control of all the animals. He gave them green plants and animals to eat.

# Chapter 3

## Languages

### Pre-Reading

1. Which language do you feel is hardest to learn: English, Chinese or some other language?
2. What are some things which can cause barriers between people from different countries or ethnic groups?

### Vocabulary Definitions

#### Exercise 1:

In the parenthesis next to the following vocabulary words, write the letter of its corresponding definition. In addition, write the Tibetan translation of the vocabulary word in the space to the right. One has been done for you. Use a dictionary to look-up words you don't know.

- |                                    |         |   |
|------------------------------------|---------|---|
| 1. language ( )                    | _____   | A. large from one side to another; wide           |
| 2. broad ( )                       | _____   | B. blocks of baked clay for making houses         |
| 3. valley ( )                      | _____   | C. a tall, narrow building                        |
| 4. to settle down ( )              | _____   | D. to confuse or make hard to understand          |
| 5. bricks ( )                      | _____   | E. to move somewhere and make it home             |
| 6. to bake ( )                     | _____   | F. to become famous or well known for something   |
| 7. tower ( )                       | _____   | G. to cook in an oven                             |
| 8. to make a name for yourself ( ) | _____   | H. low land between mountains or hills            |
| 9. to scatter ( I )                | གཞོན་པ་ | I. to make things go in many different directions |
| 10. to mix up ( )                  | _____   | J. a system of words people use to communicate    |

### Text: Genesis 11:1-9

1 The whole world had only one language. All people spoke it. 2 They moved to the east and found a broad valley in Babylonia. There they settled down.  
 3 They said to each other, "Come. Let's make bricks and bake them well." They used bricks instead of stones. They used tar to hold the bricks together.  
 4 Then they said, "Come. Let's build a city for ourselves. Let's build a tower that reaches to the sky. We'll make a name for ourselves. Then we won't be scattered over the face of the whole earth."  
 5 But the Lord\* came down to see the city and the tower the people were building. 6 The Lord said, "They are one people. And all of them speak the same language. That is why they can do this. Now they will be able to do anything they plan to. 7 Come. Let us go down and mix up their language. Then they will not understand each other."  
 8 So the Lord scattered them from there over the whole earth. And they stopped building the city. 9 The Lord mixed up the language of the whole world there. That's why the city was named Babel. From there the Lord scattered them over the face of the whole earth.

*New International Reader's Version® (NIRV®, 1996)*

\*[Note: 'the Lord' here is another name for God, the Creator]

འགོད་པ། 11:1-9 创世纪 11:1-9

11 <sup>1</sup> ཡང་མི་ཀུན་ལ་སྐད་ཅིག་དང་གཏམ་གཅིག་ཡོད།  
<sup>2</sup> དེ་ཚོ་ཤར་ཕྱོགས་སུ་སོང་སྐབས་ཤི་ནི་ཨར་ཞེས་པའི་ཡུལ་གྱི་ཐང་ཞིག་ལ་སྐྱེ་བས་ནས་དེར་གཞིས་ཆགས་བྱས།  
<sup>3</sup> ཡང་ཁོ་ཚོས་གཅིག་གིས་གཅིག་ལ་“ད་ང་ཚོས་ས་མག་བཟོས་ནས་མི་ལ་ནན་གྱིས་སྲིག་དགོས་”ཞེས་ཟེར།  
 དེ་ལྟར་བྱས་ནས་དེ་རྣམས་ཀྱིས་རྫོང་ཚང་ལ་ས་མག་དང་། ཨར་འདམ་གྱི་ཚང་ལ་སྐྱེ་བའི་ཐང་གི་ཕྱོད་བྱས།  
<sup>4</sup> ཡང་ཁོ་ཚོས་“ང་ཚོ་མིང་གྲགས་ཚོད་པའི་ཕྱིར་དང་། ང་ཚོ་འཇམ་གླིང་ཡོངས་སུ་གཏོར་བར་མི་འགྱུར་བའི་  
 ཕྱིར་དང་ཚོས་རང་གི་དོན་དུ་གོང་ཁྲེང་ཞིག་དང་དེའི་ནང་མཁར་མཐོ་པོ་ནམ་མཁའ་ལ་ཐུག་པ་ཞིག་ཅིག་དགོས་”  
 ཞེས་ཟེར། <sup>5</sup> དེ་ནས་ཡུ་མེ་དགོན་མཚོག་གིས་མི་རྣམས་ཀྱིས་བརྟེན་པའི་གོང་ཁྲེང་དང་མཁར་མཐོ་པོ་གཟིགས་  
 པར་མར་ཐེབས་པ་དང་། <sup>6</sup> ཁོང་གིས་“དེ་ཚོ་སྐད་གཅིག་དང་མི་རིགས་གཅིག་ཡིན་པས་དེ་ལྟ་བུའི་ལས་འགོ་  
 འཇུགས་པ་ཡིན། ད་ཕྱིན་ཚད་ཁོ་ཚོས་གང་གྲུང་འདོད་པ་ཚང་མ་མི་སྲིད་པ་གང་ཡང་མེད། <sup>7</sup> ད་ཁོ་ཚོའི་སྐད་  
 དེ་ལན་ཚུན་བརྗེ་མི་འཕྲོད་པའི་ཕྱིར་ང་ཚོ་བབས་ནས་སྐད་དེ་དགྲུག་པར་གྲུང་དགོས་”ཞེས་གསུངས་པ་དང་།  
<sup>8</sup> ཡུ་མེ་དགོན་མཚོག་གིས་ཁོ་ཚོ་ས་ཆ་དེ་ནས་ས་གཞི་ཀུན་ལ་གཏོར་བས་ཁོ་ཚོས་གོང་ཁྲེང་དེ་བརྟེན་ཆུ་མཚམས་  
 བཞག། <sup>9</sup> དེའི་ཕྱིར་གོང་ཁྲེང་དེའི་མིང་ལ་བུ་བའ་ཞེས་བཏགས། གང་ཡིན་ཟེར་ན། དེར་ཡུ་མེ་དགོན་  
 མཚོག་གིས་མི་རྣམས་ཀྱི་སྐད་དགྲུགས་ནས་ས་གཞི་ཀུན་དུ་གཏོར་བ་གནང་ངོ་།།

Vocabulary Practice

Exercise 2:

Use the vocabulary words provided to complete the following sentences taken from the text above (change the form as necessary). Try and do them from memory (without looking at the text).

language	broad	valley	to settle down	bricks
to bake	tar	to make a name	to scatter	to mix up

- In the beginning of this chapter the whole world had only one \_\_\_\_\_.
- The people moved to the east and \_\_\_\_\_ there.
- This new home was in a \_\_\_\_\_ in Babylonia that was very \_\_\_\_\_.
- They decided to use \_\_\_\_\_ and build a \_\_\_\_\_ that reached to the sky.

- The bricks they made needed to be \_\_\_\_\_ well before using \_\_\_\_\_ to hold them together.
- The people wanted to \_\_\_\_\_ for themselves so they wouldn't be scattered over the face of the earth.
- To stop this plan, the Lord came down and \_\_\_\_\_ the language of the whole world.
- By doing this, the Lord \_\_\_\_\_ the people across the whole earth.

Exercise 3:

Practice every day usage of these words by using the vocabulary words in the box to complete the following sentences (change the form as necessary).

language	broad	valley	to settle down	bricks
to bake	tower	to make a name	to scatter	to mix up

- That new highway is very \_\_\_\_\_. The old road was narrow and quite dangerous.
- Her parents were from the countryside, but by the time she was born, they had \_\_\_\_\_ in the city.
- The broadcasting company was building a new radio \_\_\_\_\_ on top of that hill.
- The Yarlung \_\_\_\_\_ is where many ancient kings came from.
- Before we play you must \_\_\_\_\_ the cards and then pass them out to everyone.
- In this business, if you don't advertise and \_\_\_\_\_ for yourself no one will buy your products.
- There are many \_\_\_\_\_ spoken in China, including Chinese, Mongolian, Tibetan and even English!
- Our old house was made of mud \_\_\_\_\_, but our new house is made of stone.
- The wind \_\_\_\_\_ that pile of papers all over. What a mess!
- Besides selling coffee and tea, that popular café also \_\_\_\_\_ many different goods such as bread, muffins and even cake.

## Comprehension Questions

1. In the beginning of this text, how many different languages were there in the world?
2. What was the name of the valley where the people settled?
3. What did they use to hold bricks together when building their city?
4. Why did they want to build a tower that reached to the skies (two reasons)?
5. What reason did God give for why the people were able to do anything they planned?
6. What did God do in order to prevent the people from accomplishing their goal?
7. What name was given to the city where this happened?
8. In addition to mixing up their languages, what else did God do?

## Deeper Understanding

1. Why would bricks be better than stones when building a high tower?
2. How would building a tower that reached to the skies help them?
3. Why did mixing up their language prevent them from completing their city?

## Beyond the Text

1. What kinds of recent achievements do you think are the most incredible?
2. Do you believe that humans have the ability to do most anything?
3. Do you think these accomplishments create a sense of pride and arrogance?
4. Do you think that science has caused people to believe they don't need God? If you were God, what kinds of things would you do to help people understand they need God?
5. English has helped to provide greater communication between different cultures. Has this helped to reduce the number of wars? Do you believe it's possible for the world to be truly united as ONE big family? Why or why not?
6. God desires to unite all of mankind (every culture) under one kingdom with His son, Jesus, as king. If someone asked you how to get into God's kingdom, what would you tell them?

## Answers

### Exercise 1:

1. J    2. A    3. H    4. E    5. B    6. G    7. C    8. F    9. I    10. D

### Exercise 2:

1. language            2. settled down            3. valley; broad            4. bricks; tower  
5. baked; tar            6. make a name            7. mixed up            8. scattered

### Exercise 3:

1. broad            2. settled down            3. tower            4. valley  
5. mix up            6. make a name            7. languages            8. bricks  
9. scattered            10. baked

### Comprehension Questions:

1. Only one.
2. Babylon.
3. Tar.
4. (a) To make a name for themselves; (b) So they wouldn't become scattered.
5. Because they spoke a single language and became unified.
6. God mixed up their language.
7. Babel.
8. God also scattered them over the face of the earth.

### Deeper Understanding:

1. Bricks provide a smooth surface. This provides more area for the tar to connect the bricks as well as an easier way to make sure the tower goes straight up rather than lean.
2. It could be seen from a long distance which might draw people to the city. It might also create a sense of "greatness" and "modernization" which could possibly draw people to the city.
3. They could no longer communicate ideas or plans among themselves. They needed to re-organize themselves into language groups which created new identities and "cultures" and resulted in bringing division between the people.



# Chapter 4

## God Enters the World as a Man

### Pre-Reading

1. Some things, like gravity, we know exist and can describe what they are like, but we don't really understand how they work. Can you think of other examples?
2. We sometimes refer to people as stars (movie star, sports star, star student, etc.). They are famous people who "stand out" like bright stars in the sky. What are other objects that are sometimes used to describe people?

### Vocabulary Definitions

#### Exercise 1:

In the parenthesis next to the following vocabulary words, write the letter of its corresponding definition. In addition, write the Tibetan translation of the vocabulary word in the space to the right. One has been done for you. Use a dictionary to look-up words you don't know.

- |                               |          |   |
|-------------------------------|----------|---|
| 1. witness ( )                | _____    | A. to agree to receive/take what is being given                         |
| 2. to recognize ( )           | _____    | B. a gift or favor given by God   |
| 3. to accept ( )              | _____    | C. to realize or know you have seen someone/something before            |
| 4. right ( )                  | _____    | D. proof or evidence that something is true                             |
| 5. has nothing to do with ( ) | _____    | E. privileges a person should be given based on law or moral principles |
| 6. glory ( )                  | _____    | F. kindness; goodwill; mercy  |
| 7. grace ( F )                | ཐུགས་རྗེ | G. to keep within boundaries  |
| 8. to exist ( )               | _____    | H. the thing which gives honor or fame to someone                       |
| 9. blessing ( )               | _____    | I. has no relationship with   |
| 10. to limit ( )              | _____    | J. to be; to have life  |

### Text: John 1:1-18

<sup>1</sup> In the beginning, the Word was already there. The Word was with God, and the Word was God. <sup>2</sup> He was with God in the beginning.

<sup>3</sup> All things were made through him. Nothing that has been made was made without him. <sup>4</sup> Life was in him, and that life was the light for all people. <sup>5</sup> The light shines in the darkness. But the darkness has not understood it.

<sup>6</sup> A man came who was sent from God. His name was John. <sup>7</sup> He came to give witness about that light. He gave witness so that all people could believe.

<sup>8</sup> John himself was not the light. He came only as a witness to the light. <sup>9</sup> The true light that gives light to every man was coming into the world.

<sup>10</sup> The Word was in the world that was made through him. But the world did not recognize him. <sup>11</sup> He came to what was his own. But his own people did not accept him.

<sup>12</sup> Some people did accept him. They believed in his name. He gave them the right to become children of God. <sup>13</sup> To be a child of God has nothing to do with human parents. Children of God are not born because of human choice or because a husband wants them to be born. They are born because of what God does.

<sup>14</sup> The Word became a human being. He made his home with us. We have seen his glory. It is the glory of the one and only Son.

He came from the Father. And he was full of grace and truth.

<sup>15</sup> John gives witness about him. He cries out and says, "This was the one I was talking about. I said, 'He who comes after me is more important than I am. He is more important because he existed before I was born.'" "

<sup>16</sup> We have all received one blessing after another. God's grace is not limited. <sup>17</sup> Moses gave us the law. Jesus Christ has given us grace and truth.

<sup>18</sup> No one has ever seen God. But God, the one and only Son, is at the Father's side. He has shown us what God is like.

*New International Reader's Version® (NIRV®, 1996)*

### ཡི་ཧྲ་ཅན། 1:1-18 约翰福音 1:1-18

1 <sup>1</sup> ཐོག་མར་བཀའ་ཡིད་ལགས་པ་དང་། བཀའ་ནི་དགོན་མཚོག་དང་མཉམ་དུ་བཞུགས། བཀའ་དེ་དགོན་མཚོག་ལགས་པ་ཡིན། <sup>2</sup> རིང་ནི་ཐོག་མར་དགོན་མཚོག་དང་མཉམ་དུ་བཞུགས་ཏེ། <sup>3</sup> རིང་བརྒྱད་ནས་ཅི་ཡིད་བ་ཐམས་ཅད་བྱུང་བ་དང་། རིང་མེད་བར་ཅི་ཡང་མ་བྱུང་། <sup>4</sup> རིང་གི་ནང་ན་དཔག་ཏུ་མེད་པའི་ཚེ་ཡིད་པ་དང་། ཚེ་དེ་ནི་མི་ཐམས་ཅད་ཀྱི་འོད་ཡིན་ཞོ། <sup>5</sup> འོད་དེ་ཐུན་པའི་ནང་དུ་འཕྱོ། ཐུན་པས་དེ་མཚན་



## Comprehension Questions

1. In the beginning, where was the Word?
2. What things were made through the Word?
3. What was in him (the Word) that caused him to be a light for all the people?
4. Describe what happened between the light and the darkness.
5. Who was the man sent from God to tell about the light?
6. Why was John sent to give witness to the light?
7. The Word was in the world but there was a problem? What was it?
8. What did the Word give to those who accepted and believed in his name?
9. God's Son was full of what two things?
10. What did Moses give?
11. Has anyone seen God? How can we know what God is like?

## Deeper Understanding

1. What or who is the Word?
2. List the things the Word did/does?
3. Moses gave the law. Jesus gave grace and truth. Why are these two contrasted?
4. In what other story did we read about the Word becoming a human being?

## Beyond the Text

1. In the very first story of Book One we read that God created things by speaking. "Let there be light" he said, and there was light. "Let there be..." and there was. God spoke (Words) and things came into being. How would you connect that idea with the concept of "the Word" (Jesus) presented in this text (The Word was in the world that was made through him/Jesus)?
2. If everything was made by the Word, and all life and light come from him (Jesus) then what attitude should we have toward him?
3. Why did Jesus (the Word) become a man and live on earth? What was the purpose of that?
4. If Jesus is an example of what God is like, how would you describe God (think of stories you have read about Jesus' life on earth)?
5. What kind of blessings have you received from God?

6. Why do you think some people did not (and still do not) accept that Jesus is the Son of God?
7. How does a person become a child of God?

## Answers

### Exercise 1:

1. D 2. C 3. A 4. E 5. I 6. H 7. F 8. J 9. B 10. G

### Exercise 2:

1. witness 2. recognize 3. accept 4. right  
5. has nothing to do with 6. glory 7. grace 8. existed  
9. blessing 10. limited

### Exercise 3:

1. grace 2. accepted 3. witness 4. glory 5. limited  
6. right 7. blessings 8. recognize 9. has nothing to do with  
10. existed

### Comprehension Questions:

1. The Word was with God.
2. All things.
3. Life was in Him.
4. The light shined in the darkness but the darkness didn't understand it.
5. John.
6. So that all people could believe.
7. The world did not recognize him (Jesus, the Word).
8. He gave them the right to become children of God.
9. Grace and truth.
10. The law.
11. No one has seen God, but the Son, Jesus, has shown us what God is like.

### Deeper Understanding:

1. The Word is Jesus. Jesus is God's son. Jesus is also called the light in this passage. Also Jesus (the Word) IS God. Jesus is 100% God and also 100% human at the same time!
2. The Word was with God in the beginning. All things were made by him. He was a light for all the people. He gave people who believed in his name the right to be called children of God. He became a human being. He made his home with us and showed us his glory. He came from the father. He was full of grace and truth. He gave us grace and truth. He showed us what God is like.
3. (a) The law is a set of rules we need to keep in order to be perfect like God is perfect. If we could keep all the laws and not sin, we would be able to save ourselves. However, we have all sinned. None of us has kept 100% of God's laws, and no human is able to do this. Everyone has sinned. This offends God and breaks our relationship with Him.  
(b) Grace is a gift from God. In order to restore the broken relationship between God and man, the offense had to be removed by payment of some kind. God came into the world in the human form of Jesus in order to take the punishment we deserve for our sins. The punishment that Jesus took was death on a cross. Jesus met the full requirement of the law by obeying it completely and then accepted the punishment for our disobedience. This is something we did not earn or deserve, but Jesus freely gave, and therefore we call it "Grace." We simply need to acknowledge our disobedience and express our desire to receive the gift Jesus freely offers to every person. This Grace is the only way that leads to a restored relationship with our Creator, God.
4. The record of God coming to earth in human form can be found in chapter nine of Book One in this series. It is the story of the first Christmas and explains how Jesus was born of a virgin named Mary.

## Chapter 5

# Jesus is Tempted

---

### Pre-Reading

1. Have you ever been tempted to steal something? What kind of temptation do you find most difficult to resist?
2. Which of the following do you value most and the least? (things; love; knowledge; faith; ability; power; family)

### Vocabulary Definitions

#### Exercise 1:

In the parenthesis next to the following vocabulary words, write the letter of its corresponding definition. In addition, write the Tibetan translation of the vocabulary word in the space to the right. One has been done for you. Use a dictionary to look-up words you don't know.

- |                     |         |  |
|---------------------|---------|--|
| 1. desert ( )       | _____   | A. to give honor and admiration to someone   |
| 2. to tempt ( )     | _____   | B. in a very short time; a moment  |
| 3. instant ( )      | _____   | C. to stumble  |
| 4. authority ( )    | _____   | D. strength; great ability to do something   |
| 5. worship ( )      | _____   | E. a Jewish house of worship   |
| 6. to command ( )   | _____   | F. honor and reverence given to God or someone considered sacred                       |
| 7. to trip ( )      | _____   | G. to attract someone strongly to do something that is thought to be wrong or not wise |
| 8. scripture ( )    | _____   | H. the right to control, command, or decide  |
| 9. power ( )        | _____   | I. a place with little life because there's not much water/rainfall                    |
| 10. synagogue ( )   | _____   | J. to give an order; to direct   |
| 11. to praise ( A ) | བསྐྱོད་ | K. writings or books from the Bible  |

Text: Luke 4:1-15

<sup>1</sup> Jesus, full of the Holy Spirit, returned from the Jordan River. The Spirit led him into the desert. <sup>2</sup> There the devil tempted him for 40 days.

Jesus ate nothing during that time. At the end of the 40 days, he was hungry.

<sup>3</sup> The devil said to him, “If you are the Son of God, tell this stone to become bread.”

<sup>4</sup> Jesus answered, “It is written, ‘Man doesn’t live only on bread.’” —(Deuteronomy 8:3)

<sup>5</sup> Then the devil led Jesus up to a high place. In an instant, he showed Jesus all the kingdoms of the world. <sup>6</sup> He said to him, “I will give you all their authority and glory. It has been given to me, and I can give it to anyone I want to. <sup>7</sup> So if you worship me, it will all be yours.”

<sup>8</sup> Jesus answered, “It is written, ‘Worship the Lord your God. He is the only one you should serve.’” —(Deuteronomy 6:13)

<sup>9</sup> Then the devil led Jesus to Jerusalem. He had him stand on the highest point of the temple. “If you are the Son of God,” he said, “throw yourself down from here.

<sup>10</sup> It is written,  
“ ‘The Lord will command his angels to take good care of you.

<sup>11</sup> They will lift you up in their hands.  
Then you won’t trip over a stone.’ ” —(Psalm 91:11,12)

<sup>12</sup> Jesus answered, “Scripture says, ‘Do not put the Lord your God to the test.’ ” —(Deuteronomy 6:16)

<sup>13</sup> When the devil finished all this tempting, he left Jesus until a better time.

<sup>14</sup> Jesus returned to Galilee in the power of the Holy Spirit. News about him spread through the whole countryside. <sup>15</sup> He taught in their synagogues, and everyone praised him.

New International Reader’s Version® (NIRV®, 1996)

ལུ་ཀློང་ 4:1-15 路加福音 4:1-15

<sup>1</sup> དགོན་མཚོག་གི་དམ་པའི་ཐུགས་ཉིད་ཀྱིས་ཁོང་ཡོངས་སུ་གང་སྟེ་ཡུ་ལྷོ་ར་དན་གཙང་པོ་ནས་སྤྱིར་ལོག་ཐེབས་པ་དང་། དམ་པའི་ཐུགས་ཉིད་ཀྱིས་སྐུ་ལ་ཉེ་ལོང་དབེན་སྟོང་ལ་ཐེབས། <sup>2</sup> ཉིན་ཞག་བཞི་བཅུའི་རིང་བདུད་སྟུང་གིས་ཁོང་ལ་ཉམས་ཚེད་ངས། དེའི་དུས་སུ་ཁོང་གིས་ཞལ་ཟེ་ཅི་ཡང་མ་བཞེས་པས་དུས་སྐབས་དེའི་མཐའ་མར་བཀའ། <sup>3</sup> བདུད་ཀྱིས་ཁོང་ལ་“ཁྱེད་རང་དགོན་མཚོག་གི་སྲས་ཡིན་ན་རྟོ་འདི་བག་ལེབ་ཏུ་འགྱུར་བའི་བཀའ་གཏོང་ཞིག” ཞེས་སྐྱུས་པ་ན་ <sup>4</sup> ལན་དུ་ཡུ་ལྷོ་སྟུང་གསུང་རབ་ནང་མི་ནི་བག་ལེབ་ཁོ་ནར་བརྟེན་ནས་འཚོ་བ་མ་ཡིན་ཞེས་བྲིས་འདུག” ཅེས་གསུངས་པས། <sup>5</sup> བདུད་ཀྱིས་ཁོང་ཡར་བྱིད་ནས་ཡུད་ཚམ་ཞིག་ལ་འཛིག་རྟེན་གྱི་རྒྱལ་ཁམས་ཚང་མ་བསྟན་པ་རེད། <sup>6</sup> ཁོང་ལ་“རྒྱལ་ཁམས་འདི་རྣམས་ཀྱི་སྲིད་དབང་དང་དབལ་ང་ལ་གཏད་ཡོད་དེ་ངས་སུ་ལ་དགའ་བར་སྟེར་བས་ཁྱེད་ལ་འབུལ་བར་བྱ། <sup>7</sup> དེའི་སྤྱིར་ང་ལ་ཕྱག་འཚལ་ན་དེ་ཐམས་ཅད་ཁྱེད་ཀྱི་ཡིན་པར་འགྱུར་” ཞེས་ཟེར་བས། <sup>8</sup> ལན་དུ་ཡུ་ལྷོ་སྟུང་གསུང་རབ་ནང་ཁྱེད་ཀྱིས་རང་གི་གཙོ་བོ་དགོན་མཚོག་ལ་བསྟེན་བཀའ་ལྷན་དང་ཁོང་ཁོ་ནར་ཞབས་སྤྲོད་དགོས་ཞེས་བྲིས་འདུག” ཅེས་གསུངས། <sup>9</sup> བདུད་ཀྱིས་ཡུ་ལྷོ་སྟུང་ལ་བྱིད་ནས་མཚོད་ཁང་ཆེན་མོའི་ཕྱི་རྩེ་ལ་དུ་བཅུག་ནས་ཁོང་ལ་ཁྱེད་རང་དགོན་མཚོག་གི་སྲས་ཡིན་ན་འདི་ནས་མར་མཚོངས་གིག། <sup>10</sup> གང་ལགས་ཟེར་ན། གསུང་རབ་ཀྱི་མདོ་ལས་

ཁོང་གི་སྤྱད་དགོས་པོ་ཉ་རྣམས་སུ་ནི།  
ཁྱེད་སྟོབ་དགོས་པའི་བཀའ་ཡང་གནང་བར་འགྱུར།།  
<sup>11</sup> རྟོ་ལ་ཁྱེད་ཀྱི་ཞབས་ནི་མི་ཐོག་སྤྱིར།།  
དེ་ཚོའི་ལག་པར་ཁྱེད་ནི་འདེགས་པར་འགྱུར།།\*\*\*

ཅེས་བྲིས་འདུག <sup>12</sup> ཡུ་ལྷོ་སྟུང་གསུང་རབ་ཀྱི་དགོན་མཚོག་ལ་ཉམས་ཚེད་མ་བྱོས་གིག་ཅེས་བྲིས་འདུག” ཅེས་གསུངས་པ་དང་། <sup>13</sup> བདུད་ཀྱི་ཉམས་ཚེད་ཀྱང་ཚར་བའི་རྗེས་སུ་གོ་སྐབས་མ་འཕྲོད་པར་ཁོང་དང་བྲལ།

<sup>14</sup> ཡུ་ལྷོ་དམ་པའི་ཐུགས་ཉིད་ཀྱི་དབང་ཐོག་ནས་གཞི་ལོ་ཡུལ་དུ་སྤྱིར་ལོག་ཐེབས་ནས་ཁོང་གི་སྟུན་གྲགས་གཞི་ལོ་ཡུལ་གྱི་མཐའ་ལོར་ཡུལ་ཀྱན་ཏུ་བྱུང་བ་རེད། <sup>15</sup> དེར་ཡོད་པའི་ཡུ་ལྷོ་སྟུང་པའི་འདུ་ཁང་རྣམས་ཀྱི་ནང་ལ་ཁོང་གིས་ཚོས་བསྟན་གནང་བ་དང་མི་ཚང་མས་ཁོང་ལ་བསྟོད།

\* ཚོག་བཅད་འདི་ནི་ལུང་སྟོན་པ་མོ་ཤེའི་མདོ་ལུ་པ་སྟེ་བཀའ་ལུང་ལེུ་ 8 ཡང་གྲངས་ 3 ནས་བཀོད་པ་ཡིན།  
\*\* ཚོག་བཅད་འདི་ནི་ལུང་སྟོན་པ་མོ་ཤེའི་མདོ་ལུ་པ་སྟེ་བཀའ་ལུང་ལེུ་ 6 ཡང་གྲངས་ 13 ནས་བཀོད་པ་ཡིན།  
\*\*\* ཚོག་བཅད་འདི་ནི་ལུང་སྟོན་པ་མོ་ཤེའི་མདོ་ལུ་པ་སྟེ་བཀའ་ལུང་ལེུ་ 91 ཡང་གྲངས་ 11-12 ནས་བཀོད་པ་ཡིན།  
\*\*\*\* ཚོག་བཅད་འདི་ནི་ལུང་སྟོན་པ་མོ་ཤེའི་མདོ་ལུ་པ་སྟེ་བཀའ་ལུང་ལེུ་ 6 ཡང་གྲངས་ 16 ནས་བཀོད་པ་ཡིན།

## Vocabulary Practice

### Exercise 2:

Use the vocabulary words provided to complete the following sentences taken from the text above (change the form as necessary). Try and do them from memory (without looking at the text).

trip	to command	scripture	to praise	power	
to worship	synagogue	authority	to tempt	desert	instant

1. When Jesus returned to the Jordan River, the Spirit led him into the \_\_\_\_\_.
2. The devil \_\_\_\_\_ Jesus for 40 days.
3. The devil took Jesus to a high place, and in an \_\_\_\_\_, he showed Jesus all the kingdoms of the world.
4. The devil offered to give Jesus all the \_\_\_\_\_ and glory of these kingdoms.
5. If Jesus would \_\_\_\_\_ the devil, all the kingdoms would be his.
6. The devil said that the Lord would \_\_\_\_\_ his angels to take good care of Jesus.
7. The devil explained that angels would not allow God's son to \_\_\_\_\_ over a stone.
8. Jesus responded that \_\_\_\_\_ says, 'Do not put the Lord your God to the test.'
9. After these temptations, Jesus returned to Galilee in the \_\_\_\_\_ of the Holy Spirit.
10. Jesus continued to teach in the \_\_\_\_\_, and everyone \_\_\_\_\_ him.

### Exercise 3:

Practice every day usage of these words by using the vocabulary words in the box to complete the following sentences (change the form as necessary).

trip	to command	scripture	to praise	power	
to worship	synagogue	authority	to tempt	desert	instant

1. In what ways do people \_\_\_\_\_ God?
2. Who has more \_\_\_\_\_ in your family, your father or mother?
3. Students work harder if their teachers \_\_\_\_\_ them.
4. He \_\_\_\_\_ going down the stairs and broke his arm.
5. The leader of the army \_\_\_\_\_ the soldiers to stop shooting.
6. What day of the week do Jewish people go to the \_\_\_\_\_ ?
7. She was \_\_\_\_\_ to tell a lie but finally told the truth.
8. Do you believe a person can be given \_\_\_\_\_ to heal sickness?
9. He reads the \_\_\_\_\_ every morning and spends time praying.
10. In an \_\_\_\_\_ the small child ran into the street without looking.
11. It's important to carry a lot of water if you travel through a \_\_\_\_\_ .

## Comprehension Questions

1. Where was Jesus coming from and where did the Spirit lead him?
2. How many days was Jesus tempted?
3. Why was Jesus hungry?
4. At the end of the 40 days, what was the first thing the devil tempted Jesus to do?
5. What did the devil offer Jesus after showing him the kingdoms of the world?
6. What did the devil want Jesus to do when standing on top of the temple?
7. What did the devil do when he was finished tempting Jesus?
8. Where did Jesus go afterwards and what did he do?

## Deeper Understanding

1. In the first temptation Jesus said, “Man doesn’t live only on bread.” Why did he give this response?
2. In the second temptation, the devil offered Jesus ALL the authority and glory of the kingdoms of the world. Why would this tempt Jesus? If Jesus had accepted the offer, how would this have affected us?
3. The devil showed Jesus all the cities of the world in an instant. What can we learn about the devil from this statement?
4. In the third temptation, why do you think Jesus would be tempted to jump from the top of the temple?

## Beyond the Text

1. What do we learn about God in this text that helps us in dealing with temptation?
2. What method did Jesus use in responding to each temptation? How might we learn from this?
3. In the third temptation the devil also quoted the Bible. Was he correct? What can we learn from Jesus in understanding how to resist the devil in this kind of situation?
4. The Spirit is mentioned in the beginning and end of this text. What can we learn about His role in our lives?
5. Jesus came to the earth to die in our place and to pay for our sins (instead of us). The devil didn’t want Jesus helping anyone. He tried to tempt Jesus to try a different path, a short cut to greatness. If Jesus had chosen not to die for us, do you think there is any other way we could have been saved?

## Answers

### Exercise 1:

1. I    2. G    3. B    4. H    5. F    6. J    7. C    8. K    9. D    10. E  
11. A

### Exercise 2:

1. desert      2. tempted      3. instant      4. authority      5. worship  
6. command    7. trip            8. Scripture    9. power  
10. synagogues; praised

### Exercise 3:

1. worship      2. authority      3. praise        4. tripped        5. command  
6. synagogue    7. tempted      8. power        9. scripture  
10. instant      11. desert

### Comprehension Questions:

1. Jesus was coming from the Jordan river, and the Spirit led him into the desert.
2. He was tempted for 40 days.
3. Because he ate nothing for 40 days.
4. Turn stone into bread.
5. The devil offered to give Jesus all the authority and glory of these kingdoms.
6. He wanted Jesus to jump from the top of the temple so he would be saved by angels.
7. He left Jesus until a better time.
8. Jesus returned to Galilee in the power of the Holy Spirit and taught people in the synagogues.

### Deeper Understanding:

1. As humans, we don't clearly see the spiritual world. Therefore, we are more concerned with the physical world and the importance of food for the body. Although it is important for us to have physical food, it is even more important for us to have "spiritual food" from God. This spiritual food is the life, love, teaching and encouragement we get from God through the Bible and the Holy Spirit.
2. (a) Jesus knew that God's plan was to give him all authority and glory, but he also knew that this would come through death on a cross. The devil was offering him an easier way which didn't involve the pain and suffering of dying on the cross.  
(b) If Jesus hadn't died on the cross in our place, we would still be dead in our sins with no hope of salvation.
3. The devil does have real power. He can do amazing and powerful things. Later, however, when Jesus resists his temptations he leaves. He is not all powerful like God.
4. Perhaps it would have been a way to get out of the hard road Jesus needed to travel to save us (the plan he had to suffer and die on the cross for our sins). If Jesus jumped from the temple and the angels caught him, all the people would see clearly that God saved him with supernatural power. Jesus might be tempted to win the favor of the people and gain the power and authority of the kingdoms without suffering through death on the cross and receiving the punishment for the sins of all mankind. But this wouldn't have helped us get close to God. We would still be stuck in our sins.

## Chapter 6

### A Demon Possessed Man

---

#### Pre-Reading

1. Who is the most powerful person you know? Where do they get their power?
2. Have you ever seen or heard of someone that is crazy? What can cause a person to be like this?
3. Do you believe there are demons? If so, what kinds of things do they do to people?

#### Vocabulary Definitions

##### Exercise 1:

In the parenthesis next to the following vocabulary words, write the letter of its corresponding definition. In addition, write the Tibetan translation of the vocabulary word in the space to the right. One has been done for you. Use a dictionary to look-up words you don't know.

- |                   |                  |   |
|-------------------|------------------|---|
| 1. to sail ( )    | _____            | A. a place to put a corpse (dead body)            |
| 2. shore/bank ( ) | _____            | B. a "rope" made of metal links                   |
| 3. tomb ( )       | _____            | C. to die from being unable to breathe underwater |
| 4. to beg ( )     | _____            | D. land by the edge of water                      |
| 5. chain ( )      | _____            | E. a group of animals (sheep, cows, etc)          |
| 6. herd ( )       | _____            | F. to travel on water in a boat/ship              |
| 7. legion ( )     | _____            | G. a very deep hole; crevasse; hell               |
| 8. demon ( )      | _____            | H. to ask people for food or money                |
| 9. to drown ( )   | _____            | I. to command or direct someone                   |
| 10. to tend ( )   | _____            | J. a group of one hundred, or many                |
| 11. to order ( )  | _____            | K. an evil spirit                                 |
| 12. abyss ( G )   | <u>དུམ་ཕྱུང་</u> | L. to take care of, watch over                    |



**Text: Luke 8:26-39**

<sup>26</sup> Jesus and his disciples sailed to the area of the Gerasenes across the lake from Galilee. <sup>27</sup> When Jesus stepped on shore, he was met by a man from the town. The man was controlled by demons. For a long time he had not worn clothes or lived in a house. He lived in the tombs.

<sup>28</sup> When he saw Jesus, he cried out and fell at his feet. He shouted at the top of his voice, “Jesus, Son of the Most High God, what do you want with me? I beg you, don’t hurt me!”

<sup>29</sup> This was because Jesus had commanded the evil spirit to come out of the man. Many times the spirit had taken hold of him. His hands and feet were chained, and he was kept under guard. But he had broken his chains. And then the demon had forced him to go out into lonely places in the countryside.

<sup>30</sup> Jesus asked him, “What is your name?”

“Legion,” he replied, because many demons had gone into him. <sup>31</sup> And they begged Jesus again and again not to order them to go into the Abyss.

<sup>32</sup> A large herd of pigs was feeding there on the hillside. The demons begged Jesus to let them go into the pigs. And he allowed it.

<sup>33</sup> When the demons came out of the man, they went into the pigs. Then the herd rushed down the steep bank. They ran into the lake and drowned.

<sup>34</sup> Those who were tending the pigs saw what had happened. They ran off and reported it in the town and countryside. <sup>35</sup> The people went out to see what had happened.

Then they came to Jesus. They found the man who was now free of the demons. He was sitting at Jesus’ feet. He was dressed and thinking clearly. All this made the people afraid.

<sup>36</sup> Those who had seen it told the others how the man who had been controlled by demons was now healed. <sup>37</sup> Then all the people who lived in the area of the Gerasenes asked Jesus to leave them. They were filled with fear. So he got into the boat and left.

<sup>38</sup> The man who was now free of the demons begged to go with him. But Jesus sent him away. He said to him, <sup>39</sup> “Return home and tell how much God has done for you.”

So the man went away. He told people all over town how much Jesus had done for him.

*New International Reader’s Version® (NIRV®, 1996)*

**ལུ་ཀླ 8:26-39 ལུ་ཀླ་ཐུག་ལུ་ཀླ 8:26-39**

<sup>26</sup> དེ་ནས་ཁོང་ཚུ་མཉམ་གཏུག་ལེ་ལ་ཡུལ་ནས་མཚོའི་ཕ་རོལ་གྱི་གོ་ར་སྐྱ་ཞེས་བྱ་བའི་ཡུལ་དུ་ཕྱི་བས་པ་དང་། <sup>27</sup> ཡེ་ཤུ་གྲུ་ལས་བབས་ཏེ་གོང་ཁྲུང་ནས་གདོན་འདྲེ་རྒྱམས་ཀྱིས་བཟུང་བའི་མི་ཞིག་ཁོང་དང་མཇུག་། ཁོ་ནི་ཡུན་རིང་པོར་གྱོན་ཆས་མ་གྱོན་ཞེང་ཁང་པར་མི་སྡོད་པར་དུར་ཁང་གི་ཁྲོད་དུ་གནས་། <sup>28</sup> ཁོས་ཡེ་ཤུ་མཐོང་སྟེ་ཁོང་ལ་བྱག་འཚལ་བ་དང་སྐད་ཆེན་པོས་“སྐྱ་ན་མེད་པའི་དགོན་མཚོག་གི་སྐས་ཡེ་ཤུ་ལགས། ང་ཁྱེད་དང་འབྲེལ་བ་ཅི་ཡོད་། ང་ལ་མཚན་གཅོད་གཏོང་བ་མ་གནང་”ཞེས་ཞུས་། <sup>29</sup> གང་ལགས་ཤེ་ན། ཡེ་ཤུ་གདོན་འདྲེ་མི་དེ་ནས་ཕྱིར་འཕོན་པའི་བཀའ་གནང་། ཐེངས་མང་པོར་གདོན་འདྲེ་དེས་མི་དེ་བཟུང་སྐབས་། མི་རྒྱམས་ཀྱིས་ཁོ་བསྐྱབས་ཤིང་ལུགས་ཐག་དང་རྒྱ་གཞི་གིས་བཅིངས་ན་ཡང་། ཁོས་དེ་ཚོ་བཅད་པ་དང་གདོན་འདྲེས་ཁོ་དབེན་སྡོད་ལ་བསྐྱད་། <sup>30</sup> ཡང་ཡེ་ཤུས་ཁོ་ལ་“ཁྱེད་ཀྱི་མིང་ལ་ཅི་ཟེར་”ཞེས་དྲིས་ཤིང་། མི་དེས་“དབུང་ཚོགས་ཟེར་”ཞེས་སྐྱེས་། དེ་ནི་གདོན་འདྲེ་མང་པོ་ཁོའི་ནང་ལ་འཇུག་ཡོད་པའི་ཕྱིར་རོ། <sup>31</sup> དེ་ཚོས་ཁོང་ལ་དབུལ་བར་འགོ་དགོས་པའི་བཀའ་མ་གནང་བའི་ཞུ་བ་ནན་གྱིས་སྐྱེས་། <sup>32</sup> རིའི་ལོགས་སུ་ཐག་ཁྲུ་ཆེན་པོ་ཞིག་འཚོ་བཞེན་ཡོད་པ་དང་། གདོན་འདྲེ་དེ་ཚོས་ཡེ་ཤུ་ལ་ཐག་པ་ལ་འཇུག་པའི་ཚོགས་མཚན་ཞུས་ནས་ཁོང་གིས་དེ་ཚོ་ལ་དགོངས་པ་གནང་། <sup>33</sup> གདོན་འདྲེ་དེ་ཚོ་མི་དེ་ནས་ཕྱིར་ཕོན་ཏེ་ཐག་པའི་ནང་དུ་འཇུག་ཤིང་། ཐག་པ་གཡང་གཟར་དུ་མཚོངས་ཤིང་མཚོའི་ནང་དུ་རྒྱབ་ནས་ཤིའོ། <sup>34</sup> ཐག་རྗེ་རྒྱམས་ཀྱིས་དེ་མཐོང་ནས་བྱོས་ཏེ་གོང་ཁྲུང་དང་སྟེ་ཁའི་མི་རྒྱམས་ལ་གནས་ཚུལ་དེ་བཤད་། <sup>35</sup> མི་རྒྱམས་ཅི་བྱུང་བར་ལྟ་རུ་ཡོང་། ཁོ་ཚོ་ཡེ་ཤུའི་དྲུང་དུ་སྐྱབས་དུས། དེ་སྡོན་གདོན་འདྲེས་བཟུང་བའི་མི་དེ་དྲན་པ་སོས་ཤིང་གོས་གྱོན་ནས་ཡེ་ཤུའི་ཞབས་ཀྱི་མདུན་ལ་བསྐྱད་ཡོད་པ་མཐོང་སྟེ་འཛིགས་སྐྱང་སྟེས། <sup>36</sup> ཡང་གནས་ཚུལ་འདི་མཐོང་བའི་མི་རྒྱམས་ཀྱིས་གདོན་འདྲེས་བཟུང་བའི་མི་ཅི་ལྟར་སོས་པའི་ལོ་རྒྱུས་དེ་དེར་ཡོང་མཁན་རྒྱམས་ལ་བཤད་། <sup>37</sup> འཛིགས་སྐྱབས་སྐྱེས་པས་གོ་ར་སྐྱ་དང་དེའི་མཐའ་འཁོར་ལ་ཡོད་པའི་ཡུལ་མི་ཐམས་ཅད་ཀྱིས་ཡེ་ཤུར་ཐར་ཕེབས་པའི་ཞུ་བ་སྐྱེས་པས། ཁོང་གྲུའི་ནང་དུ་བཞུགས་ནས་ཕྱིར་ལོག་ཕེབས། <sup>38</sup> དེ་སྡོན་གདོན་འདྲེས་བཟུང་བའི་མི་དེས་ཁོང་དང་མཉམ་དུ་འགོ་བའི་ཞུ་བ་སྐྱེས་ཡང་། ཁོང་གིས་མི་དེ་ཐར་ལ་བཏང་སྟེ་ཁོ་ལ་ <sup>39</sup> “ཁྱེད་རང་གི་ནང་ལ་སོང་དང་། ཁྱེད་ཀྱི་དོན་དུ་དགོན་མཚོག་གིས་ཅི་ལྟར་ལས་ཆེན་པོ་ཞིག་བསྐྱབས་པའི་ལོ་རྒྱུས་ཤོད་ཅིག་”ཅེས་བཀའ་གནང་ནས་ཁོ་ཐར་སོང་བ་དང་། ཡེ་ཤུས་ཅི་ལྟར་ལས་ཆེན་པོ་ཞིག་མཇུག་པའི་ལོ་རྒྱུས་གོང་ཁྲུང་ཡོངས་སུ་བསྐྱགས་སོ།།

## Vocabulary Practice

### Exercise 2:

Use the vocabulary words provided to complete the following sentences taken from the text above (change the form as necessary). Try and do them from memory (without looking at the text).

tomb	to beg	chain	to sail	legion	demon
to order	abyss	herd	shore	bank	to drown
to tend					

1. Jesus and his disciples \_\_\_\_\_ to the area of the Gerasenes across the lake of Galilee.
2. When Jesus stepped on the \_\_\_\_\_, he was met by a man from town.
3. The man from the town was controlled by \_\_\_\_\_.
4. For a long time the man hadn't worn clothes or lived in a house. He lived in the \_\_\_\_\_.
5. Many times he was kept under guard, but he had broken his \_\_\_\_\_.
6. When Jesus asked for the demon's name, he replied, "\_\_\_\_\_," because many demons had gone into him.
7. The demons begged Jesus many times not to \_\_\_\_\_ them to go into the \_\_\_\_\_.
8. Again the demons \_\_\_\_\_ Jesus, asking Him to allow them to go into the pigs.
9. The demons went into the pigs and the \_\_\_\_\_ rushed down a steep \_\_\_\_\_ into the lake and \_\_\_\_\_.
10. The people who were \_\_\_\_\_ the pigs saw what happened and went to tell others.

### Exercise 3:

Practice every day usage of these words by using the vocabulary words in the box to complete the following sentences (change the form as necessary).

to sail	shore	tomb	to beg	chain	legion
demon	to order	abyss	herd	bank	to drown
to tend					

1. The police man \_\_\_\_\_ the man to get out of his car and keep his hands up in the air.
2. The gardener enjoyed \_\_\_\_\_ the flowers and watering the grass.
3. Inside the castle was the \_\_\_\_\_ of an ancient king.
4. That naughty boy \_\_\_\_\_ his mother to give him some chocolate, and when she didn't, he screamed.
5. People would often \_\_\_\_\_ across the ocean before there were airplanes.
6. The nomads in this valley have the biggest \_\_\_\_\_ of yaks I have ever seen!
7. When we were playing football, the ball rolled down the \_\_\_\_\_ and into the river.
8. That dog is really mean! I hope they use a \_\_\_\_\_ to tie it up so it can't get lose.
9. These days there is quite a bit of interest in angels and \_\_\_\_\_.
10. In ancient Rome a group of a hundred soldiers was called a \_\_\_\_\_.
11. Last night the storm was so big, the waves were crashing onto the \_\_\_\_\_.
12. Be careful crossing the ice on that river. If the ice breaks and you fall in, you would definitely \_\_\_\_\_.
13. The \_\_\_\_\_ is another word for hell, but can also be used to describe a deep crack in the earth.

## Comprehension Questions

1. How did Jesus and his disciples get to the area of the Gerasenes?
2. Describe the man that met Jesus and his disciples as they stepped onto the shore.
3. What is the first thing the man begged Jesus not to do?
4. What question did Jesus ask?
5. What is the next thing the demons begged Jesus not to do?
6. Where did the demons ask Jesus to send them? What happened?
7. Describe the man after the demons left him.
8. What was the reaction of the people from this man's town?
9. What did the townsmen ask Jesus to do?
10. What did Jesus ask the man who had been freed of demons to do?

## Deeper Understanding

1. When the man possessed by demons first met Jesus, the demon cried out, "Jesus, Son of the Most High God." How do you think the demon knew Jesus was the Son of the Most High God?
2. How was the man able to break chains?
3. Why did the demons obey Jesus?

## Beyond the Text

1. The man asked Jesus not to hurt him because Jesus had ordered the demons in the man to come out. Why do you think the MAN feared Jesus?
2. Why did the demons not want to go into the Abyss?
3. What do you think happened to the demons after the pigs drowned?
4. When the townsmen saw the man dressed and thinking clearly, they were afraid. Why weren't they happy?
5. Why did Jesus not allow the man to join him and his disciples in the boat?
6. Are there still demons in the world today?
7. Are there still people possessed by demons today?
8. Does Jesus still have the power to command demons to leave?
9. In this story Jesus showed his power and victory over the demons. How did Jesus later completely beat sin, death, and all evil? Can he have this victory in your life too?

## Answers

### Exercise 1:

1. F    2. D    3. A    4. H    5. B    6. E  
7. J    8. K    9. C    10. L    11. I    12. G

### Exercise 2:

1. sailed    2. shore    3. demons    4. tombs    5. chains  
6. legion    7. order; Abyss    8. begged  
9. herd; bank; drowned    10. tending

### Exercise 3:

1. ordered    2. tending    3. tomb    4. begged    5. sail  
6. herd    7. bank    8. chain    9. demons    10. legion  
11. shore    12. drown    13. Abyss

### Comprehension Questions:

1. They sailed there by boat.
2. He was not wearing any clothes and lived in the tombs because he was controlled by demons.
3. Not to hurt him.
4. What's your name?
5. Not to send them into the Abyss.
6. They asked to be sent into a herd of pigs. Then the pigs ran down a steep bank into a lake and drowned.
7. He sat dressed with Jesus and was able to think clearly.
8. They were afraid.
9. They asked Jesus to leave their town.
10. He was asked to stay and tell those in that area about the things Jesus had done for him.

### Deeper Understanding:

1. He was possessed by demons. Demons know God and understood that Jesus was God's Son. They most likely gave that knowledge to the man.
2. It would appear that demons are able to give humans supernatural ability.
3. Because Jesus really is God's Son, he has greater authority and power than the demons. When He gives an order, the demons have no choice but to obey.

# Chapter 7

## The Sermon on the Mount

### Pre-Reading

1. What kinds of things do you think make God happy?
2. Do you have any enemies? How do you treat them?
3. Do you believe there is anyone who is perfect? Why or why not?

### Vocabulary Definitions

#### Exercise 1:

In the parenthesis next to the following vocabulary words, write the letter of its corresponding definition. In addition, write the Tibetan translation of the vocabulary word in the space to the right. One has been done for you. Use a dictionary to look-up words you don't know.

- |                         |                 |  |
|-------------------------|-----------------|--|
| 1. satisfied ( )        | _____           | A. to consider something as a possibility  |
| 2. to treat ( )         | _____           | B. a deep hole in the ground   |
| 3. prophet ( )          | _____           | C. someone who speaks to people for God  |
| 4. terrible ( )         | _____           | D. happy that what you have is enough  |
| 5. to suppose ( )       | _____           | E. either side of the face below the eye and above the lower jaw                                   |
| 6. cheek ( E )          | <u>འགྲུམ་པ་</u> | F. dust that falls when sawing a piece of wood   |
| 7. to lend ( )          | _____           | G. to move against something with great speed or violence  |
| 8. to expect ( )        | _____           | H. to let someone use something that belongs to you with the understanding it will be returned     |
| 9. mercy ( )            | _____           | I. to make things appear to be a certain way when in fact it is not true                           |
| 10. to judge ( )        | _____           | J. to act toward someone in a particular way   |
| 11. guilty ( )          | _____           | K. very, very bad  |
| 12. to shake ( )        | _____           | L. to form an opinion as to whether someone or someone's actions are good or bad                   |
| 13. pit ( )             | _____           | M. to believe that a particular action is what should and will happen (it is the right thing)      |
| 14. sawdust ( )         | _____           | N. to move back and forth using short quick movements  |
| 15. to pretend ( )      | _____           | O. kindness shown toward someone who has hurt you or is not friendly toward you                    |
| 16. to rush against ( ) | _____           | P. describes a person who has done something considered to be wrong (against the law or not moral) |

### Text: Luke 6:20-49

- <sup>20</sup> Jesus looked at his disciples. He said to them,  
 “Blessed are you who are needy.  
 God’s kingdom belongs to you.
- <sup>21</sup> Blessed are you who are hungry now.  
 You will be satisfied.  
 Blessed are you who are sad now.  
 You will laugh.
- <sup>22</sup> Blessed are you when people hate you,  
 when they have nothing to do with you  
 and say bad things about you,  
 and when they treat your name as something evil.  
 They do all this because you are followers of the Son of Man.
- <sup>23</sup> “Their people treated the prophets the same way long ago. When these things happen to you, be glad and jump for joy. You will receive many blessings in heaven.
- <sup>24</sup> “But how terrible it will be for you who are rich!  
 You have already had your easy life.
- <sup>25</sup> How terrible for you who are well fed now!  
 You will go hungry.  
 How terrible for you who laugh now!  
 You will cry and be sad.
- <sup>26</sup> How terrible for you when everyone says good things about you!  
 Their people treated the false prophets the same way long ago.
- <sup>27</sup> “But here is what I tell you who hear me. Love your enemies. Do good to those who hate you. <sup>28</sup> Bless those who call down curses on you. And pray for those who treat you badly.
- <sup>29</sup> “Suppose someone hits you on one cheek. Turn your other cheek to him also. Suppose someone takes your coat. Don’t stop him from taking your shirt.
- <sup>30</sup> “Give to everyone who asks you. And if anyone takes what belongs to you, don’t ask to get it back. <sup>31</sup> Do to others as you want them to do to you.
- <sup>32</sup> “Suppose you love those who love you. Should anyone praise you for that? Even ‘sinners’ love those who love them. <sup>33</sup> And suppose you do good to those who are good to you. Should anyone praise you for that? Even ‘sinners’ do that.
- <sup>34</sup> And suppose you lend money to those who can pay you back. Should anyone praise you for that? Even a ‘sinner’ lends to ‘sinners,’ expecting them to pay everything back.
- <sup>35</sup> “But love your enemies. Do good to them. Lend to them without expecting to get anything back. Then you will receive a lot in return. And you will be sons of

the Most High God. He is kind to people who are evil and are not thankful. <sup>36</sup> So have mercy, just as your Father has mercy.

<sup>37</sup> “If you do not judge others, then you will not be judged. If you do not find others guilty, then you will not be found guilty. Forgive, and you will be forgiven.

<sup>38</sup> Give, and it will be given to you. A good amount will be poured into your lap. It will be pressed down, shaken together, and running over. The same amount you give will be measured out to you.”

<sup>39</sup> Jesus also gave them another example. He asked, “Can a blind person lead another blind person? Won’t they both fall into a pit? <sup>40</sup> Students are not better than their teachers. But everyone who is completely trained will be like his teacher.

<sup>41</sup> “You look at the bit of sawdust in your friend’s eye. But you pay no attention to the piece of wood in your own eye. <sup>42</sup> How can you say to your friend, ‘Let me take the bit of sawdust out of your eye’? How can you say this while there is a piece of wood in your own eye? You pretender! First take the piece of wood out of your own eye. Then you will be able to see clearly to take the bit of sawdust out of your friend’s eye.

<sup>43</sup> “A good tree doesn’t bear bad fruit. And a bad tree doesn’t bear good fruit. <sup>44</sup> You can tell each tree by the kind of fruit it bears. People do not pick figs from thorns. And they don’t pick grapes from bushes.

<sup>45</sup> “A good man says good things. These come from the good that is put away in his heart. An evil man says evil things. These come from the evil that is put away in his heart. Their mouths say everything that is in their hearts.

<sup>46</sup> “Why do you call me, ‘Lord, Lord,’ and still don’t do what I say? <sup>47</sup> Some people come to me and listen to me and do what I say. I will show you what they are like. <sup>48</sup> They are like someone who builds a house. He digs down deep and sets it on solid rock. When a flood comes, the river rushes against the house. But the water can’t shake it. The house is well built.

<sup>49</sup> “But here is what happens when people listen to my words and do not obey them. They are like someone who builds a house on soft ground instead of solid rock. The moment the river rushes against that house, it falls down. It is completely destroyed.”

*New International Reader’s Version® (NIRV®, 1996)*

ལུ་ཀློང་ 6:20-49 ལུ་ཀློང་ལོ་ལོ་ལོ་ 6:20-49

20 ཉེ་གནས་ལྷན་ལ་གཞིགས་ཏེ་ཁོང་གིས་  
དགོན་མཚོག་གི་རྒྱལ་སྲིད་ཚོར་གནང་བས།།  
དབུལ་ཕོངས་ཡིན་པ་ཚེ་ལྷན་ལ་བདེ་བ་ཡིན།།  
21 ཚེ་ཚོ་ཚེ་པར་འགྱུར་ངེས་ཡིན་པའི་ཕྱིར།།  
ད་ལྟ་བུའི་ལྷན་ལ་ཉེ་བའི་བུ་ཡིན།།  
རྗེས་མ་ཚེ་ཚོ་དགའ་བར་འགྱུར་བའི་ཆེད།།  
ཚེ་ལྷན་ལ་ད་ལྟ་བུའི་ལྷན་ལ་བདེ་བ་ཡིན།།  
22 མི་ཡི་རིགས་ཀྱི་བུ་ཡི་དོན་དུ་ནི།།  
ཚེ་ལ་སྤང་དང་ཟུར་ལ་ཕུད་བྱེད་དེ།།  
དམའ་འབེབས་གཏོང་དང་མཐོང་རྒྱུད་པའི་སྐབས།།  
ཚེ་ལྷན་ལ་ཉེ་བའི་བུ་ཡིན་པས་སོ།།

23 ལྟོས་དང་། དགོན་མཚོག་གི་ཞིང་ཁམས་སུ་ཚེ་ལ་བྱ་དགའ་ཆེན་པོ་ཡོད་པས་ཉེ་བའི་མོ་དེར་དགའ་བའི་  
ངང་ནས་མཚོངས་ཤིག གང་ལགས་ཟེར་ན། དེ་ཚོའི་མེས་པོས་ཀྱང་ལུང་སྟོན་པ་ལྷན་ལ་དེ་ལྟར་བྱས་སོ།

24 འོན་ཀྱང་  
ལྷག་པོ་ཡོངས་སུ་སེམས་གསོ་ཐོབ་ཟེན་བས།།  
ཚེ་ལྷན་ལ་ཆད་པ་ཕོག་པར་འགྱུར་ངེས་ཡིན།།  
25 ཚེ་ལྷན་ལ་བཟས་ནས་ཚེ་ལ་འགྱུར་བ་ལ།།  
ལྟོགས་པར་འགྱུར་བའི་ཆད་པ་ཕོག་པར་འགྱུར།།  
གང་མོ་དགོད་པར་ཆད་པ་ཕོག་འགྱུར་ཏེ།།  
ཚེ་ལྷན་ལ་ལྟ་བུའི་ཚེ་ལ་འགྱུར།།  
26 ལུང་སྟོན་རྒྱུ་མར་མེས་པོས་བྱས་པ་ལྟར།།  
ཐམས་ཅད་ཚེ་ལ་བསྟོད་བསྐྱོད་བྱས་འགྱུར་ན།།  
ཚེ་ལྷན་ལ་ཆད་པ་ཕོག་པར་འགྱུར་ངེས་ཡིན།།

ཞེས་གསུངས་སོ། <sup>27</sup> ཡང་ཁོང་གིས་“ངས་ཚེ་ལ་ཉེ་བའི་ལྷན་ལ་ལྷན་ལ་ལྷན་ལ་བུ་ཡིན་པ་བྱིས་ཤིག ཚེ་ལ་སྤང་མཁན་ལྷན་ལ་ལས་བཟང་པོ་བྱོས། <sup>28</sup> ཚེ་ཚོར་དམོད་མོ་འདེབས་མཁན་ལ་

འཁྲུག་གི་སྐྱོད་པ་ཤིང་། བྱིན་ཚོར་སྐྱོད་ར་གཏོང་མཁན་གྱི་དོན་དུ་སྐྱོན་ལམ་འདེབས་ཤིག་<sup>29</sup> སུས་བྱིད་ལ་  
 འགྲམ་པ་ལ་གཅིག་ལ་འགྲམ་ལུག་ལུས་ན། དེ་ལ་འགྲམ་པ་གཞན་ཡང་སྟོན། སུས་བྱིད་ཀྱི་ཕྱི་གོས་སྟོགས་ན།  
 དེ་ལ་ནང་གོས་ཀྱང་འབྱེད་དུ་ལྷུག་<sup>30</sup> སུས་བྱིད་ལ་གང་ཞིག་ལུས་ན་དེ་ལ་སྐྱིན། སུས་བྱིད་ཀྱི་དངོས་  
 པོ་སྟོགས་ན། དེ་ལ་རྩེ་བྱིད་ཤོག་ཅེས་མི་ཟེམ།<sup>31</sup> མི་གཞན་གྱིས་ཇི་ལྟར་བྱིད་ཚོར་བྱས་ན་དགའ་བ་  
 བཞིན། དེ་ལྟར་གཞན་ལ་བྱིས་ཤིག་<sup>32</sup> བྱིད་ལ་བྱམས་པ་བྱེད་མཁན་ལ་གཅེས་ན་ཅི་ཕན། སྐྱིག་  
 ཉེས་ཅན་ཡང་སོ་སོར་བྱམས་པ་བྱེད་མཁན་ལ་གཅེས།<sup>33</sup> བྱིད་ལ་བཟང་པོ་བྱེད་མཁན་ལ་བཟང་པོ་བྱས་ན་  
 ཅི་ཕན། སྐྱིག་ཉེས་ཅན་གྱིས་ཀྱང་དེ་ལྟར་བྱེད།<sup>34</sup> སྐྱིན་པ་ལེན་པའི་ཆེད་དུ་མི་གཞན་ལ་གཡམ་ན་ཅི་ཕན།  
 སྐྱིན་པ་ལེན་པའི་ཕྱིར་ཐ་ན་སྐྱིག་ཅན་གིས་སྐྱིག་ཅན་ལ་གཡམ།<sup>35</sup> གཡམ་ཏེ་བྱིད་ཀྱིས་དགྲ་པོ་རྣམས་ལ་བྱམས་  
 ཤིང་། བཟང་པོ་བྱེད། སྐྱིན་པ་ལེན་པའི་རེ་བ་མེད་པར་མི་གཞན་ལ་གཡམ་ན། བྱིད་ཀྱི་བྱ་དགའ་ཆེན་  
 པོ་ཡིན་པ་མ་ཟད། བྱིད་ཚོར་སྐྱོན་ལེན་པའི་དཀོན་མཆོག་གི་སྐྱེས་ཡིན་པར་འགྱུར། གང་ལགས་ཟེར་ན།  
 ཁོང་གིས་དྲིན་ལན་ལོག་འཇུག་པ་དང་དན་པ་རྣམས་ལ་དྲིན་སྦྱོང་མཛད།<sup>36</sup> བྱིད་ཀྱི་ཡབ་ལྷན་མེ་ཅན་  
 ཡིན་པ་ལྟར་བྱིད་ཀྱང་སྐྱིད་མེ་ཅན་དུ་འགྱུར་དགོས་”ཞེས་གསུངས།<sup>37</sup> ཡང་ཁོང་གིས་“སྐྱོན་འདོགས་མ་  
 བྱིས་དང་བྱིས་མ་གཅོད་འགྱུར་བར་མི་འགྱུར། ཁ་རྩེད་མ་གཏོང་དང་ཆད་པ་ཕོག་པར་མི་འགྱུར། གཞན་ལ་  
 གྲུ་ཡངས་གཏོང་དང་རང་གི་སྐྱིག་ཉེས་སེལ་བར་འགྱུར།<sup>38</sup> མི་གཞན་ལ་སྐྱིན་དང་བྱིད་ལ་གནང་བར་འགྱུར་ཏེ།  
 བྱི་གང་ལས་མང་། མནན་ནས་སྐྱུགས་པར་བྱིད་ཀྱི་སྐྱེ་བ་ལ་གཏོང་ཕོད་ཀྱིས་ག་པར་འགྱུར། སྐྱོད་གང་  
 གིས་འཇུག་པ་དེ་རང་གིས་བྱིད་ལ་ཡང་འཇུག་པར་འགྱུར་”ཞེས་གསུངས།<sup>39</sup> དེ་ཡང་དཔེའི་སྐོན་པ་ཁོང་  
 གིས་དེ་རྣམས་ལ་“ཡོང་བ་ཞིག་གིས་ཡོང་བ་གཞན་ཞིག་བྱིད་ན་དེ་ཚོ་གཉིས་ས་སྤོང་ལ་འགྲེལ་བར་མི་འགྱུར་རམ།  
<sup>40</sup> ཉེ་གནས་སྐོན་པ་དཔོན་ལས་ཆེ་བ་མ་ཡིན། འོན་ཀྱང་ཡོན་ཏན་མཐར་སྐྱིན་པ་རྣམས་སྐོན་པ་དཔོན་དང་འདྲ་བར་  
 འགྱུར།<sup>41</sup> གཞན་གྱི་མིག་ལ་ཡོད་པའི་ཤིང་རྩལ་མཐོང་ཡང་། རང་གི་མིག་ལ་ཡོད་པའི་གདུང་མ་མི་མཐོང་བ་  
 དེ་ཅི་ཡིན།<sup>42</sup> རང་གི་མིག་ལ་ཡོད་པའི་གདུང་མ་མི་མཐོང་བར་གཞན་ལ་བྱིད་ཀྱི་མིག་ལ་ཡོད་པའི་ཤིང་རྩལ་  
 འདོན་པར་བྱ་ཞེས་ཅི་ལྟར་ཟེམ། ཁ་བཤད་དོན་ལ་མི་གནས་པ་བྱིད། རང་གི་མིག་ལ་ཡོད་པའི་གདུང་མ་  
 ཐོན་ཅིག་ དེ་ནས་གཞན་གྱི་མིག་ལ་ཤིང་རྩལ་འདོན་པའི་ཆེད་དུ་གསལ་པོར་མཐོང་”ཞེས་གསུངས།<sup>43</sup> ཁོང་  
 གིས་“ཤིང་སྤོང་བཟང་པོ་ལས་འབྲས་བུ་དན་པ་མི་སྐྱེ་ལ། ཤིང་སྤོང་དན་པ་ལས་འབྲས་བུ་ལེགས་པོ་མི་སྐྱེ།  
<sup>44</sup> དེའི་ཕྱིར་ཤིང་སྤོང་རེ་རེ་འབྲས་བུ་ནས་ངོ་ཤེས། སུས་ཀྱང་ཚོར་ཤིང་ནས་བསེ་ཡབ་ཀྱི་འབྲས་བུ་མི་ལེན་ལ།  
 ཡང་ན་སེ་བའི་མེ་ཏོག་ནས་རྒྱན་འབྲུམ་འཕོག་མི་སྲིད།<sup>45</sup> སེམས་ཀྱི་བཟང་མཛོད་ནས་མི་སེམས་བཟང་པོ་ཞིག་  
 གིས་བཟང་པོ་འདོན་དང་། སེམས་ཀྱི་དན་མཛོད་ནས་མི་དན་པ་ཞིག་གིས་དན་པ་འདོན། གང་ལགས་ཟེར་ན།  
 སེམས་ཀྱི་མཛོད་ནས་ཁ་ཡིས་བཞེད།<sup>46</sup> ང་ལ་གཙོ་བོ་ལགས། གཙོ་བོ་ལགས་ཞེས་ཟེར་ནས་དེའི་ཁ་ལ་  
 མི་ཉན་པ་དེ་ཅི་ཡིན།<sup>47</sup> ངའི་རྩེ་ཡོང་ནས་ངས་སྐྱོ་བའི་ཚིག་ཐོས་ཏེ་ཉམས་ལེན་བྱེད་མཁན་འདི་ལྟར་ཡིན།  
<sup>48</sup> ཁོ་ནི་གཏོང་རིང་པོ་བརྗོད་ནས་བྲག་ལ་མྱང་གཞི་བརྟན་པོ་བཟོས་པའི་ཁང་པ་བཟོ་མཁན་ལྟར་ཡིན། ཁང་

པ་དེ་ལེགས་པོར་བརྩིགས་པས་ཚུ་ལོག་བྱུང་སྐབས་དྲག་ཏུ་རྒྱུག་པའི་ཚུ་ཡིས་ཁང་པ་དེར་ཕོག་ནས་གཡོས་མ་བྱུབ།  
<sup>49</sup> འོན་ཀྱང་ངས་སྐྱོ་བའི་ཚིག་ཐོས་ནས་ཉམས་ལེན་མི་བྱེད་མཁན་ནི་མྱང་གཞི་མེད་པའི་ཁང་པ་བཟོ་མཁན་ལྟར་  
 ཡིན། ཚུ་ལོག་བྱུང་སྐབས་དྲག་ཏུ་རྒྱུག་པའི་ཚུ་ཡིས་ཁང་པ་དེར་ཕོག་ནས་འཕྲལ་དུ་རྩིབ་སྟེ། ཁང་པ་དེ་ཡོངས་སུ་  
 འཇིག་”ཅེས་གསུངས་སོ།།

**Vocabulary Practice**

**Exercise 2:**

Use the vocabulary words provided to complete the following sentences taken from the text above (change the form as necessary). Try and do them from memory (without looking at the text).

to lend	to treat	to suppose	guilty	to rush	to expect
to judge	pretender	mercy	pit	sawdust	terrible
to shake	satisfied	cheek	prophet		

- Blessed are you who are hungry now. You will be \_\_\_\_\_ .
- When people \_\_\_\_\_ your name as something evil, they do so because you follow the Son of Man.
- In the same way, the Jews living before the time of Jesus treated the \_\_\_\_\_ badly.
- Jesus said that it would be \_\_\_\_\_ for those who are rich in this life!
- \_\_\_\_\_ someone hits you on one \_\_\_\_\_. Turn your other to him also.
- And suppose you \_\_\_\_\_ money to those who can pay you back. Should you be praised?
- Even a ‘sinner’ lends to ‘sinners,’ \_\_\_\_\_ them to pay everything back.
- So have \_\_\_\_\_, showing kindness just as your Father does the same for you.
- If you do not \_\_\_\_\_ others, then you will not be judged.
- If you do not find others \_\_\_\_\_, then you will not be found guilty.
- It will be pressed down, \_\_\_\_\_ together, and running over.
- Can a blind person lead another blind person? Won’t they both fall into a \_\_\_\_\_?
- You look at the bit of \_\_\_\_\_ in your friend’s eye.
- How can you say this while there is a piece of wood in your own eye? You \_\_\_\_\_!
- When a flood comes, the river \_\_\_\_\_ against the house.

### Exercise 3:

Practice every day usage of these words by using the vocabulary words in the box to complete the following sentences (change the form as necessary).

to lend	to treat	to suppose	guilty	to expect	to rush
to judge	to pretend	mercy	pit	sawdust	terrible
to shake	satisfied	cheek	prophet		

1. Teachers \_\_\_\_\_ their students to complete all their homework.
2. After drinking three glasses of cold water on a hot day, you will feel \_\_\_\_\_.
3. Don't \_\_\_\_\_ your Coke can before opening it, or you'll be sorry.
4. Could you please \_\_\_\_\_ me some money for the ticket. I forgot my purse.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ you met the president on the street. What would you ask him?
6. I don't like the way he \_\_\_\_\_ his wife.
7. As the child slept, his mother gave him a kiss on the \_\_\_\_\_.
8. It's difficult to show \_\_\_\_\_ to someone who has hurt your child.
9. You \_\_\_\_\_ to be happy, but I can see that you're very angry.
10. The teacher had to \_\_\_\_\_ which of the two students was telling the truth.
11. The \_\_\_\_\_ talked about the end of the world, which made everyone deeply afraid.
12. The child felt \_\_\_\_\_ because she had taken the candy without asking.
13. The \_\_\_\_\_ was used to help start the fire.
14. I'm going to stay in bed today since I feel so \_\_\_\_\_.
15. Everyone in the crowd \_\_\_\_\_ to be first on the train.
16. They threw all of their garbage into a deep \_\_\_\_\_.

### Comprehension Questions

1. What did Jesus say belongs to the ones who are needy?
2. How will those who are now hungry feel in the future?
3. What will those who are now sad do in the future?
4. How will you be treated if you follow the Son of Man?

5. How should we treat our enemies?
6. Suppose someone hits you on the cheek. What does Jesus say you should do?
7. Complete the following summary of how we should treat others: Do to others...?
8. Why does Jesus say we should have mercy?
9. What does Jesus say will happen if a blind person leads a blind person?
10. Jesus said that sometimes we show a friend he has "sawdust" in his eye. What does Jesus say is in our own eye when we do that?
11. What kind of fruit does a good tree NOT bear?
12. How can you tell if a tree is good or bad?
13. Some people say good things. Some people say bad things. What is the source of the things that people say, whether good or bad?
14. A person who listens to Jesus' words and does what he says is compared to what?
15. What happens when a flood comes against the house built on a rock?
16. The person who listens to Jesus' words and does NOT do what he says is compared to what?
17. What happens when a flood comes against the house built on sand?

### Deeper Understanding

1. Verses 20-22 describe people who are in need. Jesus indicates in this passage that being in a position of need is helpful and normal for those entering God's kingdom. Why do you think he says this?
2. In verses 27-32, what did Jesus say a person should do when others mistreat them? Was Jesus asking them to do something he wasn't willing to do himself? Can you give some examples? What example does Jesus give in verses 35-36 of someone who shows this kind of mercy?
3. Why shouldn't we be praised for loving those who love us or doing good to those who do good to us?
4. How does Jesus relate blind people to students and teachers?
5. Do you know the word "hypocrite" (e.g. pretender)? Which parts of this teaching talk about hypocrites or hypocritical actions?
6. When Jesus talks about "trees and fruit", who are the trees, and what is the fruit?

## Beyond the Text

1. What things close our hearts to the reality that there is more than our material world? What things open our hearts?
2. If we love our enemies and allow them to mistreat us, what prevents them from destroying us? What happened to Jesus? What happened to his message? How has he affected the world? Did he lose in the end?
3. When a student corrects another student in the presence of his/her teacher, how does the teacher feel? Who is the teacher in this text? If Jesus is the Son of God, who are the students?
4. The things Jesus is asking his students to do (not be hypocritical, bear good fruit, obey, etc.) are very difficult. Do you think it is possible to do the things Jesus asks? If so, how can we do them?
5. Obviously Jesus isn't talking about actual sawdust and pieces of wood in people's eyes. What is he talking about? What are some examples of "sawdust and pieces of wood"?

## Answers

### Exercise 1:

1. D 2. J 3. C 4. K 5. A 6. E 7. H 8. M  
9. O 10. L 11. P 12. N 13. B 14. F 15. I 16. G

### Exercise 2:

1. satisfied 2. treat 3. prophets 4. terrible 5. suppose; cheek  
6. lend 7. expecting 8. mercy 9. judge 10. guilty  
11. shaken 12. pit 13. sawdust 14. pretender 15. rushes

### Exercise 3:

1. expect 2. satisfied 3. shake 4. lend 5. suppose  
6. treats 7. cheek 8. mercy 9. pretend 10. judge  
11. prophet 12. guilty 13. sawdust 14. terrible 15. rushed  
16. pit

### Comprehension Questions:

1. God's kingdom.
2. Satisfied.
3. They will laugh.
4. People will hate you, say bad things about you, having nothing to do with you and treat your name as something evil.
5. Love them, do good for them, bless them, pray for them, lend to them (without expecting to get anything back) and have mercy on them.
6. Turn your other cheek to him also (don't retaliate or seek revenge).
7. Do to others as you want them to do to you.
8. He says we should have mercy because our Father (God) had mercy on us. If we want to be forgiven we must also forgive others.
9. They will both fall into a pit.
10. A piece of wood.
11. Bad fruit.
12. You can tell each tree by the fruit it bears.
13. Our hearts are the source of everything that comes out of our mouth (good or bad).
14. A person who does what Jesus says is like someone who builds a house on a solid rock.



15. When a flood comes on the house built on rock, the water can't shake it.
16. A person who does do what Jesus says is like someone who builds a house on the sand.
17. When a flood comes on the house built on sand, it falls down and is completely destroyed.

**Deeper Understanding:**

1. We all need God's help, but we often don't recognize this is true. The need for physical help can many times lead a person to become aware of his/her need for God. God can provide not only for physical needs, but also spiritual needs through his son, Jesus, who provided the greatest gift of all, eternal life with God, through his death on the cross. If our physical needs lead us to see our need for God, this is a good thing!
2. Jesus said we shouldn't repay evil for evil. We should love our enemies. We should "turn the other cheek." This is exactly what he did for us on the cross. Evil people beat, mocked and crucified him. He chose not to save himself but gave his life to save us. God the Father is also kind to people who are not kind. Jesus had mercy just like his Father had mercy.
3. It is natural to do good to those who do good to you. It is nothing special. It is NOT natural, and requires God's help, to do good to those who do evil to you.
4. Just as the blind need someone to help lead them, students need the help of their teachers to learn new things.
5. A person who sees someone else's problems (the sawdust in their eye) but doesn't see his/her own problems (the piece of wood in their eye) is a hypocrite. They are quick to criticize or condemn other people but don't recognize their own faults.
6. The trees are people and the fruit is what they do with their lives.

## Chapter 8

### The Loving Father

---

*Pre-Reading*

1. How can you forgive someone? Why would you want to?
2. Is it possible to be "good", act in the "right" way, follow the rules and still not be in a right relationship with God?

*Vocabulary Definitions*

**Exercise 1:**

In the parenthesis next to the following vocabulary words, write the letter of its corresponding definition. In addition, write the Tibetan translation of the vocabulary word in the space to the right. One has been done for you. Use a dictionary to look-up words you don't know.

- |                     |   |   |
|---------------------|---|---|
| 1. share ( )        | _____   | A. something owned by someone                         |
| 2. sandals ( H )    | <span style="color: #C8513E;">ལྷོ་མོ་</span><br>_____ | B. to say or show you are not willing to do something |
| 3. prostitute ( )   | _____   | C. suitable; acceptable; proper; worthy               |
| 4. fit ( )          | _____   | D. gentle, loving, kind to someone                    |
| 5. property ( )     | _____   | E. a part of something that has been divided          |
| 6. tender ( )       | _____   | F. to use more than is needed                         |
| 7. calf ( )         | _____   | G. to put things away                                 |
| 8. to refuse ( )    | _____   | H. an open shoe held on by straps                     |
| 9. to run low ( )   | _____   | I. uncontrolled, sinful living                        |
| 10. wild living ( ) | _____   | J. a baby cow   |
| 11. to waste ( )    | _____   | K. to almost run out of or use up something           |
| 12. to pack up ( )  | _____   | L. a person who has sex in exchange for money         |

**Text: Luke 15:11-32**

<sup>11</sup> Jesus continued, “There was a man who had two sons. <sup>12</sup> The younger son spoke to his father. He said, ‘Father, give me my share of the family property.’ So the father divided his property between his two sons.

<sup>13</sup> “Not long after that, the younger son packed up all he had. Then he left for a country far away. There he wasted his money on wild living. <sup>14</sup> He spent everything he had.

“Then the whole country ran low on food. So the son didn’t have what he needed. <sup>15</sup> He went to work for someone who lived in that country, who sent him to the fields to feed the pigs. <sup>16</sup> The son wanted to fill his stomach with the food the pigs were eating. But no one gave him anything.

<sup>17</sup> “Then he began to think clearly again. He said, ‘How many of my father’s hired workers have more than enough food! But here I am dying from hunger!

<sup>18</sup> I will get up and go back to my father. I will say to him, ‘Father, I have sinned against heaven. And I have sinned against you. <sup>19</sup> I am no longer fit to be called your son. Make me like one of your hired workers.’” <sup>20</sup> So he got up and went to his father.

“While the son was still a long way off, his father saw him. He was filled with tender love for his son. He ran to him. He threw his arms around him and kissed him.

<sup>21</sup> “The son said to him, ‘Father, I have sinned against heaven and against you. I am no longer fit to be called your son.’

<sup>22</sup> “But the father said to his servants, ‘Quick! Bring the best robe and put it on him. Put a ring on his finger and sandals on his feet. <sup>23</sup> Bring the fattest calf and kill it. Let’s have a big dinner and celebrate. <sup>24</sup> This son of mine was dead. And now he is alive again. He was lost. And now he is found.’

“So they began to celebrate.

<sup>25</sup> “The older son was in the field. When he came near the house, he heard music and dancing. <sup>26</sup> So he called one of the servants. He asked him what was going on.

<sup>27</sup> “ ‘Your brother has come home,’ the servant replied. ‘Your father has killed the fattest calf. He has done this because your brother is back safe and sound.’

<sup>28</sup> “The older brother became angry. He refused to go in. So his father went out and begged him.

<sup>29</sup> “But he answered his father, ‘Look! All these years I’ve worked like a slave for you. I have always obeyed your orders. You never gave me even a young goat so I could celebrate with my friends. <sup>30</sup> But this son of yours wasted your money with some prostitutes. Now he comes home. And for him you kill the fattest calf!’

<sup>31</sup> “ ‘My son,’ the father said, ‘you are always with me. Everything I have is yours. <sup>32</sup> But we had to celebrate and be glad. This brother of yours was dead. And now he is alive again. He was lost. And now he is found.’”

*New International Reader’s Version® (NIRV®, 1996)*

**ལུ་ཀློང་ 15:11-32    路加福音 15:11-32**

<sup>11</sup> ཡང་ཁོང་གིས་ “མི་ཞིག་ལ་སྲུ་གཉིས་ཡོད་པ་དང་། <sup>12</sup> རྒྱུ་བ་ཡིས་ཁོའི་ཕ་ལཱ། ཡབ་ལགས། ང་ལ་འཕྲོ་བ་རྒྱ་ཡིན་པའི་ཞོར་སྐལ་གནང་རོགས་ཞེས་ཟེར་ནས་ཕ་ཡིས་སྲུ་གཉིས་ལ་རང་གི་ཞོར་བགོ་བཤའ་བརྒྱབ།

<sup>13</sup> ཉེན་མང་པོ་མ་འོན་པར་སྲུ་རྒྱུ་བ་ཡིས་ཅི་ཡོད་པ་ཐམས་ཅད་བསྐྱུ་ནས་ཡུལ་ཐག་རིང་པོ་ཞིག་ལ་སོང་། དེར་ཁོས་བྱ་སྤྱོད་ངན་པ་སྤྲོ་ཚོགས་གྱི་ཕོག་ནས་ཞོར་སྐལ་འཕྲོག་བརྒྱག་བཏང་། <sup>14</sup> རྒྱུ་ཞོར་ཚང་མ་རྫོགས་ནས་ཡུལ་དེར་ལོ་སྐྱོན་ཚབས་ཚེན་བྱུང་བས།

ཁོ་བགྲམ་སྒྲོམ་གྱིས་མམར་ཉེ་དཔུལ་པོར་གྱུར། <sup>15</sup> དེའི་ཕྱིར་ཁོ་ཕྱིན་ནས་ཡུལ་དེའི་ཁྱིམ་བདག་གཅིག་ལ་བརྟེན་བས། དེས་ཕག་པ་འཚོ་བའི་ཚེད་སྲུ་ཞིང་ཐང་དུ་བཏང་། <sup>16</sup> སྲུ་གཉིས་ཀྱི་ཁོ་ལ་ཟ་རྒྱ་ཅི་ཡང་མ་སྟེར་བས་ཁོ་ལོ་གསལ་ཉེ་ཕག་པས་ཟ་བའི་གང་སྲུ་ཡང་ཟ་འདོད་ཚེན་པོ་ལངས། <sup>17</sup> དེ་ནས་སློ་ཁྱུག་སྟེ་ཁོས་ངའི་ཕ་ཡི་གཡོག་པོ་རྣམས་ལ་བག་ལེབ་ཟ་རྒྱ་ཡོད་པ་མ་ཟད་བསག་རྒྱ་ཡང་ཡོད།

འོན་ཀྱང་ཡུལ་འདིར་ང་ལོ་གསལ་ནས་གི་གྲབས་འདུག <sup>18</sup> ང་ཡར་ལངས་ཉེ་ཕའི་རྩར་ཕྱིན་ནས་ཁོང་ལ། ཕ་ལགས། ངས་དགོན་མཚོག་གི་ཞིང་ཁམས་དང་ཁྱེད་ལ་སྤྲིག་ཉེས་བྱས་པས་

<sup>19</sup> ང་ལྷོ་ཁྱེད་ཀྱི་སྲས་ཞེས་ཟེར་བ་མི་འོས་ཉེ་ང་ཁྱེད་ཀྱི་སྲུ་པ་ཞིག་དང་འདྲ་བར་མཛོད་ཅེས་ཟེར་བར་བྱ་སྟེ། <sup>20</sup> ཁོ་ལངས་ནས་ཕའི་རྩར་སོང་། འོན་ཀྱང་ཕ་ཡིས་རྒྱུ་བ་རིང་ནས་ཁོ་མཐོང་བ་དང་།

སྟོང་རྗེས་སྐྱེས་ནས་སུའི་མདུན་དུ་བརྒྱགས་པ་དང་། ཁོ་ལ་འཐམ་སྟེ་འོ་བྱས། <sup>21</sup> སྲུ་ཡིས་ཁོང་ལ། ཕ་ལགས། ངས་དགོན་མཚོག་གི་ཞིང་ཁམས་དང་ཁྱེད་ལ་སྤྲིག་ཉེས་བྱས་པས་ང་ལྷོ་ཁྱེད་ཀྱི་སྲུ་ཞེས་འབོད་པར་མི་འོས་ཞེས་སྐྱུས།

<sup>22</sup> འོན་ཀྱང་ཕ་ཡིས་ཁོའི་གཡོག་པོ་ཚོར། ལྷུ་པ་ཡག་ཤོས་མཁྱོགས་པོར་འབྲེལ་ནས་གཡོགས་ལ། ཁོའི་མཚུབ་མོར་སོར་གདུབ་དང་། རྒྱུ་བར་ལྷུ་མ་གཡོགས་ཤིག་བཏུང་།

<sup>23</sup> བེལ་རྒྱགས་པ་དེ་འདིར་ཁྱེད་ནས་སོང་། ང་ཚོས་ཟ་ཞིང་དག་འཚོན་བྱེད་པར་བྱ། <sup>24</sup> གང་ལགས་ཤེ་ན། ངའི་སྲུ་འདི་གི་ནས་སྐྱུར་གསོན་པོར་གྱུར་ཞིང་། བརྒྱགས་ནས་རྟེན་པར་གྱུར་བས་སོ་ཞེས་བཤའ་ནས་དེ་ཚོས་སྤྱིད་པོ་བཏང་།

<sup>25</sup> དེའི་རིང་ལ་ཁོའི་སྲུ་རྒྱུ་བ་ཞིང་ཁམས་ཡོད་པ་དང་། ཁོ་ཕྱིར་ལོ་གསལ་ཁང་པར་སྐྱབས་པའི་ཚེ་རོལ་མོ་དང་ཞབས་བྲོའི་སྐྱོ་ཕོས་པས། <sup>26</sup> གཡོག་པོ་ཞིག་བོས་ནས་དེ་ཅི་ཡིན་ཞེས་སྐྱོད་ཚད་སྤྲིས། <sup>27</sup> གཡོག་པོ་དེས་ཁྱེད་ཀྱི་གཟུང་པོ་སྐྱུ་ཁམས་བཟང་པོར་སྐྱབས་པས་ཁྱེད་ཀྱི་ཡབ་ཀྱིས་བེལ་རྒྱགས་པ་བསད་ཅེས་སྐྱུས།

<sup>28</sup> དེ་ཕོས་ནས་ཁྱོས་ཉེ་ཁོ་འཕྲུལ་བར་མ་དག་ལ། ཁོའི་ཕ་སྐྱོ་རོལ་དུ་ཡོང་ནས་ཁོ་ནང་དུ་འཕྲུལ་བར་རེ་འབོད་བྱས། <sup>29</sup> ཁོས་ཁོའི་ཕ་ལ། གཟིགས་དང་། ཁྱེད་ཀྱི་བཀའ་ལས་ནམ་ཡང་མ་འགལ་ཉེ་ལོ་འདི་འདྲ་མང་པོའི་རིང་ལ་

ངས་གཞིག་པོ་ལྟར་ལས་ཀ་བྱས་ཀྱང་། དེ་གོགས་པོ་དང་མཉམ་དུ་དགའ་སྟོན་བྱེད་པའི་ཕྱིར་བྱེད་ཀྱིས་ར་ལྷག་  
 ཙམ་ཡང་ང་ལ་གནང་མ་གྱུར། <sup>30</sup> འོན་ཀྱང་བྱེད་ཀྱི་བྱ་བའི་བུ་སྐད་འཛོལ་མ་རྣམས་དང་མཉམ་དུ་བྱེད་ཀྱི་རྒྱ་  
 རོར་རྒྱུ་མཐོང་མཁོར་ཡོང་སྐབས་བྱེད་ཀྱིས་འོ་འོ་འོ་ལ་བེད་རྒྱགས་པ་བསད་ཅེས་བཤད། <sup>31</sup> བ་ཡིས་  
 ཁོ་ལ། དེ་ལྟར་བྱེད་ཀྱིས་རྒྱ་རྒྱ་དང་དང་མཉམ་དུ་ཡོད་པས། ང་ལ་ཅི་ཡོད་པ་ཐམས་ཅད་བྱེད་ཀྱི་ཡིན།  
<sup>32</sup> འོན་ཀྱང་ང་ཚོས་སྤྱོད་སྤྱོད་ཀྱིས་དགའ་སྟོན་བྱེད་དགོས། གང་ལགས་ཟེར་ན། བྱེད་ཀྱི་ལུ་བོ་འདི་གི་ནས་  
 སྐར་གསོན་པོར་གྱུར་ཞིང་། བསྐྱེད་ཀྱི་ལུ་བོ་འདི་ལྟར་ཟེར་”ཞེས་གསུངས་སོ།།

### Vocabulary Practice

#### Exercise 2:

Use the vocabulary words provided to complete the following sentences taken from the text above (change the form as necessary). Try and do them from memory (without looking at the text).

share	sandals	prostitute	fit	property	tender
calf	to refuse	to run low	wild living	to waste	to pack up

1. The younger son asked for his \_\_\_\_\_ of what the family owned.
2. The father divided his \_\_\_\_\_ between the two sons.
3. Not long after that, the youngest son \_\_\_\_\_ all that he had and left.
4. The younger son spent all his money on \_\_\_\_\_.
5. Then the whole country \_\_\_\_\_ on food.
6. The father saw his son returning and was filled with \_\_\_\_\_ love for his son and ran to him.
7. The son told his father he was no longer \_\_\_\_\_ to be called his son.
8. The father told his servants to put a ring on his son’s finger and \_\_\_\_\_ on his feet.
9. The older son became angry and \_\_\_\_\_ to go in.
10. The older son said “But this son of yours \_\_\_\_\_ your money with some \_\_\_\_\_.”
11. The older son was angry because his father had killed a \_\_\_\_\_ to celebrate the younger son’s return.

#### Exercise 3:

Practice every day usage of these words by using the vocabulary words in the box to complete the following sentences (change the form as necessary).

share	sandals	prostitute	fit	property	tender
calf	to refuse	to run low	wild living	to waste	to pack up

1. When he was a student he \_\_\_\_\_ all his time playing basketball and failed most of his classes because he didn’t study enough.
2. My new computer was broken, but when I took it back to the store, they \_\_\_\_\_ to give me a new one.
3. My feet get sweaty in regular shoes so I prefer to wear \_\_\_\_\_.
4. When she held her tiny baby, she felt so much \_\_\_\_\_ love that she was full of joy.
5. Sadly, many poor women become \_\_\_\_\_ to earn money.
6. Most businesses must give a \_\_\_\_\_ of the profits to their investors.
7. How many \_\_\_\_\_ are born to your cows each year?
8. Our barley flour is starting to \_\_\_\_\_. Could you go out and get a big bag for us?
9. He is very wealthy and has lots of \_\_\_\_\_.
10. After making many mistakes and causing lots of problems, her leader said, “\_\_\_\_\_ all your things and get out of this office!”
11. “I feel so ashamed and undeserving,” he said. “I don’t feel \_\_\_\_\_ to be a part of this family after what I’ve done.”
12. That town has many places to gamble and party. People often drink, fight and participate in \_\_\_\_\_ while they are there.

### *Comprehension Questions*

1. What did the father do when his youngest son asked for his share of the family property?
2. What did the younger son do with his share of the property?
3. What kind of work did the younger son find when food in the country ran low?
4. What idea did the younger son have that would change his poor life?
5. What was the father's response when he saw his son returning home?
6. After bringing the youngest son back to the house, what did the father then do?
7. Why did the father prepare the huge feast?
8. What was the oldest son's response?
9. How did the father try and change the oldest son's mind?
10. How did the oldest son describe his work for his father?
11. Why was the older son jealous?

### *Deeper Understanding*

1. Why do you think the father saw his son "while he was still a long way off"? Why do you think the older brother didn't?
2. Why do you think the father used words such as "dead" and "lost" to describe the younger son?
3. Which son do you think has the deepest love for his father? Why?
4. How would you describe the older brother's feelings toward his younger brother?
5. How would you describe the older brother's feelings toward his father?
6. Who do you think the father in this story represents? Who do you think the younger and older sons represent?

### *Beyond the Text*

1. This story illustrates the relationship between God and people. In what ways are people like the youngest son? In what ways are they like the oldest son?
2. When was the youngest son ready to return to his Father? When are people, who are like the youngest son, ready to return and find their creator, God?
3. What is preventing the older son from "returning" to his Father? When are people, who are like the oldest son, ready to return and find their creator, God?
4. What did the youngest son do to receive his father's forgiveness? What must people do to receive God's forgiveness?
5. Do you think God would welcome home any child no matter how wildly they lived?
6. What must the oldest son do to make things right with the father again?
7. What does this parable teach us about the way people are? What does it teach us about the way God is? According to this parable what must people do to experience God's forgiveness?

## Answers

### Exercise 1:

1. E 2. H 3. L 4. C 5. A 6. D  
7. J 8. B 9. K 10. I 11. F 12. G

### Exercise 2:

1. share 2. property 3. packed up 4. wild living 5. ran low  
6. tender 7. fit 8. sandals 9. refused  
10. wasted; prostitutes 11. calf.

### Exercise 3:

1. wasted 2. refused 3. sandals 4. tender 5. prostitutes  
6. share 7. calves 8. run out 9. property 10. pack up  
11. fit 12. wild living

### Comprehension Questions:

1. He divided the property between his two sons.
2. He packed up all he had. Then he left for a country far away. There he spent everything he had on wild living.
3. He worked in the fields to feed the pigs.
4. He decided to go back to his father and ask to become like one of his father's hired workers.
5. He ran to him. He threw his arms around him and kissed him.
6. He took the best robe and put it on his son. Then he put a ring on his son's finger and sandals on his feet. Finally, he prepared a huge feast to celebrate his youngest son's return!
7. His son was dead but now alive. He was lost but now found.
8. He was angry and refused to go into the house and celebrate.
9. He went outside to speak with him and begged him to join the celebration.
10. All these years I've worked like a slave for you. I have always obeyed your orders.
11. His father gave public honor to the youngest son who had acted recklessly, but the father did nothing to publicly recognize the older son as being a good son who worked hard.

### Deeper Understanding:

1. (a) Perhaps because the father continued to hope day after day that his youngest son would change, longing to see his son return. He may well have kept looking far away watching for him to come home.  
(b) Perhaps because the older son felt his brother was worthless. He may not have liked the way his younger brother treated their father and truly wished his brother would never return.
2. Dead – this describes the relationship. As long as there is no communication with the son, the relationship is dead (to have relationship requires interaction).  
Lost – this describes the condition of the son. He had taken the wrong road in life and didn't know he was going in the wrong direction.
3. The younger son realized he needed his father and looked for help. His father accepted him though he (the younger son) had treated his father terribly. Therefore, possibly the youngest son had a greater love for his father.
4. The older brother was jealous and angry. Perhaps he even hated his younger brother. He likely thought of himself as better than his brother.
5. The older brother was proud and self righteous. He was trying to earn his father's love by working hard. He thought it wasn't fair that the younger brother was still loved even though he hadn't worked hard. He didn't realize that the father loved them both whether or not they worked hard. This is grace. The older son showed he didn't really love his father when he shamed his father by refusing to go in to the party.
6. The father represents God. The younger son represents someone who understands they need God's forgiveness. The older son represents someone who doesn't think they need God's forgiveness.

# Chapter 9

## The Good Neighbor

### Pre-Reading

1. How well do you know your neighbors?
2. Have you ever walked past someone needing help and not stopped? Explain.
3. Do you think any part of a person lives forever?

### Vocabulary Definitions

#### Exercise 1:

In the parenthesis next to the following vocabulary words, write the letter of its corresponding definition. In addition, write the Tibetan translation of the vocabulary word in the space to the right. One has been done for you. Use a dictionary to look-up words you don't know.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. to put to the test ( ) _____                                     | A. part of the body that has been hurt   |
| 2. eternal ( ) _____  | B. a member of the Jewish tribe of Levi who are responsible to be the priests for Israel     |
| 3. soul ( ) _____   | C. to feel pity or sorrow because you see another person having problems/suffering           |
| 4. to make a person look good ( ) _____                             | D. the people living in the land of Samaria who were only part Jewish (not full blood)       |
| 5. robber ( F ) <span style="margin-left: 20px;">ཇག་པ་</span> _____ | E. cloth used to put on or around a wound  |
| 6. to attack ( ) _____  | F. someone who steals things   |
| 7. to strip ( ) _____   | G. to remove all of one's clothing   |
| 8. to beat ( ) _____  | H. to occur by chance; not planned   |
| 9. to happen to be ( ) _____  | I. without end or beginning  |
| 10. to pass by ( ) _____  | J. to go by/past something   |
| 11. Levite ( ) _____  | K. the part of a person which is NOT part of his/her body and continues to exist after death |
| 12. Samaritan ( ) _____   | L. cost; money spent for something   |
| 13. to feel sorry for ( ) _____                                     | M. to test the ability of someone or some thing  |
| 14. wound ( ) _____   | N. to cause someone to appear to be good at doing something                                  |
| 15. bandage ( ) _____   | O. to use force with the plan to cause harm  |
| 16. expense ( ) _____   | P. to hit with force   |

### Text: Luke 10:25-37

<sup>25</sup> One day an authority on the law stood up to put Jesus to the test. "Teacher," he asked, "what must I do to receive eternal life?"

<sup>26</sup> "What is written in the Law?" Jesus replied. "How do you understand it?"

<sup>27</sup> He answered, " 'Love the Lord your God with all your heart and with all your soul. Love him with all your strength and with all your mind.'—(Deuteronomy 6:5) And, 'Love your neighbor as you love yourself.'"—(Leviticus 19:18)

<sup>28</sup> "You have answered correctly," Jesus replied. "Do that, and you will live."

<sup>29</sup> But the man wanted to make himself look good. So he asked Jesus, "And who is my neighbor?"

<sup>30</sup> Jesus replied, "A man was going down from Jerusalem to Jericho. Robbers attacked him. They stripped off his clothes and beat him. Then they went away, leaving him almost dead. <sup>31</sup> A priest happened to be going down that same road. When he saw the man, he passed by on the other side. <sup>32</sup> A Levite also came by. When he saw the man, he passed by on the other side too.

<sup>33</sup> But a Samaritan came to the place where the man was. When he saw the man, he felt sorry for him. <sup>34</sup> He went to him, poured olive oil and wine on his wounds and bandaged them. Then he put the man on his own donkey. He took him to an inn and took care of him. <sup>35</sup> The next day he took out two silver coins. He gave them to the owner of the inn. 'Take care of him,' he said. 'When I return, I will pay you back for any extra expense you may have.'

<sup>36</sup> "Which of the three do you think was a neighbor to the man who was attacked by robbers?"

<sup>37</sup> The authority on the law replied, "The one who felt sorry for him." Jesus told him, "Go and do as he did."

*New International Reader's Version® (NIRV®, 1996)*

ལུ་གླུ། 10:25-37 ལུ་གླུ། 10:25-37

25 དེ་ནས་ཁོང་ལ་ཉམས་ཚེད་ལེན་པའི་ཕྱིར་ཚོས་བྲིས་ས་ལ་མཁས་པའི་མི་ཞིག་ཡར་ལངས་ཏེ་ཁོང་ལ་“སློབ་དཔོན་ལགས། དཔག་ཏུ་མེད་པའི་ཚེ་ཐོབ་ཕྱིར་ངས་གང་ཞིག་བྱ་དགོས་སམ” ཞེས་ཞུས་པ་ན། 26 ཁོང་གིས་མི་དེ་ལ་“ཚོས་བྲིས་ས་ནང་ལ་ཅི་ཞིག་ལའོད་འདུག བྱིད་ཀྱིས་ཇི་ལྟར་སློབ་ཀྱི་ཅེས་གསུངས། 27 ལན་དུ་ཁོས་“ཚོས་བྲིས་ས་ནང་ལ་རང་གིས་གཙོ་བོ་དགོན་མཚོག་ལ་སློབ་གཙོག་སེམས་གཙོག་དང་རྣམ་པ་ཅི་ཡོད་ཀྱིས་བརྟེ་བར་བྱངས་ཤིག བྱིད་རང་གིས་བྲིས་མཚོས་ལ་རང་དང་འདྲ་བར་བརྟེ་བར་བྱངས་ཤིག་ཅེས་ལའོད་འདུག” ཅེས་སྟུགས། 28 ཡེ་ཤུས་“བྱིད་ཀྱིས་བཤད་པ་དེ་བཤད་ན། དེ་ལྟར་བྱས་ན་འཚོ་བར་འགྱུར་” ཞེས་གསུངས། 29 འོན་ཀྱང་རང་ལ་རྒྱ་མཚོན་ཡོད་པ་གསལ་བོར་སྟོན་ཕྱིར་མི་དེས་ཡེ་ཤུ་ལ་“འོ་ན་ངའི་བྲིས་མཚོས་སུ་ཡིན་” ཞེས་དྲིས། 30 ལན་དུ་ཡེ་ཤུས་“མི་ཞིག་ཡེ་ཤུ་ཤ་ལེམ་ནས་ཡེ་ཤུ་གོ་བྱོར་བྱིད་དུ་མར་འགོ་དུས་ཇག་པས་བཟུང་ནས་གོས་ཕྱོགས་པ་དང་། ཁོ་མ་གྱི་ཚམ་དུ་བརྟུངས་ནས་སོང་། 31 དེ་དུས་ཡེ་ཤུ་དུ་པའི་སློམ་ཞིག་ལམ་དེ་བརྟུང་ནས་ཡོང་བ་དང་སྐབས་འཁེལ་བས་མི་དེ་མཐོང་སྟེ་ཕར་ཕྱོགས་ནས་སོང་། 32 དེ་བཞིན་དུ་ཡེ་ཤུ་པ་ཟེར་བའི་མཚོན་གཡོག་ཅིག་ཡོང་ནས་མི་དེ་མཐོང་སྟེ་ཡང་ཕར་ཕྱོགས་ནས་སོང་། 33 འོན་ཀྱང་སུ་མར་ཡུ་པའི་འགྲུལ་པ་ཞིག་ཡོང་ནས་མི་དེ་མཐོང་སྟེ་སྟོང་རྗེས་སྟེས། 34 ཁོའི་ཕྱོགས་སུ་སོང་ནས་མ་ལ་སྐྱམ་དང་རྒྱུན་ཚང་གས་ཏེ་རས་ཀྱིས་བཏུམས་པ་དང་། རང་གི་ལལ་མར་བསྐྱོན་ཏེ་མགོན་ཁང་གི་བདག་པོ་ལ་སྟེར་ནས་ཁོ་ལ་བདག་སྐྱོང་བྱས་ཤིག དེ་ལས་ལྷག་པ་བཏང་ན་ལོག་སྐབས་སུ་ངས་བྱིད་ལ་སྟེན་པ་འདྲེ་ལ་རྒྱ་ཡིན་ཞེས་སྟུགས། 36 བྱིད་ཀྱི་བསམ་པར་འདི་ཚོ་གསུམ་གྱི་ནང་ནས་ཇག་པས་བཟུང་བའི་བྲིས་མཚོས་སུ་ཡིན་” ཞེས་གསུངས་ནས་ 37 ཚོས་བྲིས་ས་ལ་མཁས་པའི་མི་དེས་“ཁོ་ལ་སྟོང་རྗེས་བྱིད་མཁན་དེ་ཡིན་” ཞེས་ཟེར་བས། ཡེ་ཤུས་“སོང་ལ་དེ་ལྟར་བྱས་ཤིག” ཅེས་གསུངས་སོ།།

Vocabulary Practice

Exercise 2:

Use the vocabulary words provided to complete the following sentences taken from the text above (change the form as necessary). Try and do them from memory (without looking at the text).

to strip	soul	Levite	to pass by	to put ... to the test	
to attack	robber	eternal	wound	to feel sorry for	
to happen to be		bandage	expense	beat	Samaritan
make ... look good					

- In this passage, an authority on the law wanted to \_\_\_\_\_.
- “Teacher,” he asked, “what must I do to receive \_\_\_\_\_ life?”
- Jesus asked what the law required, and the man replied, “Love the Lord your God with all your heart, \_\_\_\_\_, mind and strength.”
- But the man wanted to \_\_\_\_\_ so he asked a second question.
- Jesus told the story of a man traveling to Jericho who was \_\_\_\_\_ by \_\_\_\_\_.
- The thieves \_\_\_\_\_ off his clothes, \_\_\_\_\_ him and left him as dead.
- Just after the robbery, a priest \_\_\_\_\_ going down that same road.
- When the priest saw the injured man, he \_\_\_\_\_ on the other side.
- After the priest, a \_\_\_\_\_ also went past the injured man, but he also did not help.
- Finally, a \_\_\_\_\_ passed by the man who had been robbed, and when he saw the man, he \_\_\_\_\_ him.
- The Samaritan poured olive oil and wine on his \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ them.
- After taking the wounded man to an inn, the Samaritan offered to pay back the owner for any extra \_\_\_\_\_ that resulted from caring for the traveler.

### Exercise 3:

Practice every day usage of these words by using the vocabulary words in the box to complete the following sentences (change the form as necessary).

put xx to the test	soul	pass by	feel sorry for		
expense	eternal	robber	beat	wound	strip
make xx look good	attack	happen to be	bandage		

1. Do you \_\_\_\_\_ poor children who aren't able to get an education?
2. The \_\_\_\_\_ used a gun to steal the money.
3. He was \_\_\_\_\_ late last night on his way back home and hurt badly.
4. Who will pay the \_\_\_\_\_ for food and a place to stay?
5. Do you believe each person has their own \_\_\_\_\_ ?
6. The \_\_\_\_\_ wrapped on his hand was bright red from all the blood.
7. The coach put his players \_\_\_\_\_ by making them run an extra kilometer.
8. Lots of people \_\_\_\_\_ the beggar without looking at him.
9. I \_\_\_\_\_ sitting next to a movie star on the plane and got his autograph.
10. He wanted us to make him \_\_\_\_\_ in front of his girlfriend.
11. The boys \_\_\_\_\_ and jumped into the cool Lhasa river.
12. I think it's wrong for a teacher to \_\_\_\_\_ a student for making a mistake.
13. The body is temporary but the soul is \_\_\_\_\_.
14. The \_\_\_\_\_ on his hand was bleeding badly.

### Comprehension Questions

1. Who asked Jesus the question about eternal life?
2. In what four ways did the man say you should love the Lord your God?
3. Who else did he say you should love?
4. Why did the man ask "Who is my neighbor"?
5. What did the robbers do to the man in the story?
6. Who was the first person to see the man? What did he do?
7. Who was the second person to see the man? What did he do?
8. How did the third person feel when he saw the man?
9. What six things did he do to help the man?

### Deeper Understanding

1. Love is more than a feeling and so is compassion (feeling sorry for someone). How did the Samaritan act on his feeling. What did he actually DO?
2. The story says we should love our neighbors. Who does Jesus say our neighbors are? How can we love them?

### Beyond the Text

1. Jews didn't like Samaritans. They looked down on them. Are there people of a different race or ethnicity you don't like? Explain.
2. Are there people that look down on you? Explain.
3. Do you think God would ask us to love either of these groups (those we look down on or those that look down on us)? Why or why not?
4. In the story Jesus told, why do you think he chose the three different people (priest, Levite and Samaritan) to meet the wounded person on the road, and why do you think he chose the response that each one made?
5. Do you think it is possible to completely keep the commandments listed in verse 27? Why or why not?
6. Has there ever been a person who has kept all those commandments and never sinned in his or her life?
7. If the reward for keeping the commandments is life ("do that and you will live"), in your opinion, what do you think the consequence of not keeping those commandments would be?



## Answers

### Exercise 1:

1. M 2. I 3. K 4. N 5. F 6. O 7. G 8. P  
9. H 10. J 11. B 12. D 13. C 14. A 15. E 16. L

### Exercise 2:

1. put Jesus to the test      2. eternal      3. soul  
4. make himself look good      5. attacked; robbers      6. stripped; beat  
7. happened to be      8. passed by      9. Levite  
10. Samaritan; felt sorry for      11. wounds; bandaged      12. expense

### Exercise 3:

1. feel sorry for      2. robber      3. attacked      4. expenses      5. soul  
6. bandage      7. to the test      8. passed by      9. happened to be  
10. look good      11. stripped      12. beat      13. eternal      14. wound

### Comprehension Questions:

1. An authority on the law.
2. With all your heart, soul, strength and mind.
3. Your neighbor.
4. He wanted to make himself look good.
5. Attacked him, stripped off his clothes, beat him and left him almost dead.
6. A priest. He passed by on the other side.
7. A Levite. He also passed by on the other side.
8. He felt sorry for him.
9. He poured olive oil and wine on his wounds; he bandaged them; he put him on his donkey; he took him to an inn; he took care of him; and he paid the innkeeper to take care of him.

### Deeper Understanding:

1. Not only did the Samaritan feel sorry for the man (compassion), but he also did something about it. He helped the man in many ways. He took care of his wounds and took him to a safe place to get better. He paid all the expenses himself, too. In the same way, Jesus showed his feeling of love for us by dying on the cross to save us.
2. Our neighbors are not just those living near us who are like us, but they are also the ones that we don't usually get along with or like, for example, those of other ethnic groups who speak other languages; those richer than us or poorer than us; those less educated than us as well as the ones more educated; those believing a religion different from our own; and those who have differing political views. They are all our neighbors and we should love and care for them all just like the Samaritan did in the parable Jesus told in this chapter, by actually serving them. Jesus showed this same kind of concern for all mankind when he died on the cross for our sin.

# Chapter 10

## The Way, the Truth and the Life

### Pre-Reading

1. What kinds of things make you worried?
2. How can a person know God?
3. Do you believe miracles are possible? Where does the power come from?

### Vocabulary Definitions

#### Exercise 1:

In the parenthesis next to the following vocabulary words, write the letter of its corresponding definition. In addition, write the Tibetan translation of the vocabulary word in the space to the right. One has been done for you. Use a dictionary to look-up words you don't know.

- |                     |                 |  |
|---------------------|-----------------|--|
| 1. troubled ( )     | _____           | A. to make ready   |
| 2. to trust ( )     | _____           | B. from right now and into the future  |
| 3. to prepare ( A ) | བློ་སྒྲིག་བྱེད་ | C. only  |
| 4. except ( )       | _____           | D. expresses that what follows is the smallest or easiest thing that you should do                                 |
| 5. from now on ( )  | _____           | E. worried   |
| 6. enough ( )       | _____           | F. expresses that what follows is the next thing you will do   |
| 7. among ( )        | _____           | G. expresses that the amount you have is what's needed (not more, not less)  |
| 8. just ( C )       | _____           | H. to depend on; to rely on  |
| 9. at least ( )     | _____           | I. be together with others   |
| 10. about to ( )    | _____           | J. no other but the thing that follows   |
| 11. even ( )        | _____           | K. expresses that the situation described by the adjective which follows will increase more than the present level |

*Text: John 14:1-14*

- 14 <sup>1</sup>“Do not let your hearts be troubled. Trust in God. Trust in me also.  
<sup>2</sup> “There are many rooms in my Father’s house. If this were not true, I would have told you. I am going there to prepare a place for you. <sup>3</sup> If I go and do that, I will come back. And I will take you to be with me. Then you will also be where I am.  
<sup>4</sup> “You know the way to the place where I am going.”  
<sup>5</sup> Thomas said to him, “Lord, we don’t know where you are going. So how can we know the way?”  
<sup>6</sup> Jesus answered, “I am the way and the truth and the life. No one comes to the Father except through me. <sup>7</sup> If you really knew me, you would know my Father also. From now on, you do know him. And you have seen him.”  
<sup>8</sup> Philip said, “Lord, show us the Father. That will be enough for us.”  
<sup>9</sup> Jesus answered, “Don’t you know me, Philip? I have been among you such a long time! Anyone who has seen me has seen the Father. So how can you say, ‘Show us the Father’?  
<sup>10</sup> “Don’t you believe that I am in the Father? Don’t you believe that the Father is in me? The words I say to you are not just my own. The Father lives in me. He is the One who is doing his work. <sup>11</sup> Believe me when I say I am in the Father. Also believe that the Father is in me. Or at least believe what the miracles show about me.  
<sup>12</sup> “What I’m about to tell you is true. Anyone who has faith in me will do what I have been doing. In fact, he will do even greater things. That is because I am going to the Father.  
<sup>13</sup> “And I will do anything you ask in my name. Then the Son will bring glory to the Father. <sup>14</sup> You may ask me for anything in my name. I will do it.

*New International Reader’s Version® (NIRV®, 1996)*

ཡི་ཉ་ནན། 14:1-14 约翰福音 14:1-14

14 <sup>1</sup> ཡེ་ལུས་ཉེ་གནས་ནམས་ལ་“ཁྱེད་ཚོའི་སེམས་ལ་འགྲུག་པར་མ་འགྱུར། དགོན་མཚོག་ལ་དད་པ་  
 གྱིས་ལ་ང་ལ་ཡང་དད་པ་གྱིས། <sup>2</sup> ངའི་ཡབ་ཀྱི་མོ་བྱང་ལ་གནས་ཁང་མང་པོ་ཡོད། དེ་ལྟར་མ་ཡིན་ན་  
 ངས་ཁྱེད་རྣམས་ལ་སྐྱ་མ་ནས་བཤད་ཡོད། ང་ཁྱེད་ཚོའི་དོན་དུ་གནས་གྲ་སྒྲིག་བྱེད་དུ་འགྲོ། <sup>3</sup> ང་སོང་ནས་  
 ཁྱེད་ཚོའི་དོན་དུ་གནས་གྲ་སྒྲིག་བྱས་ན། ང་ཕྱིར་ལོག་སྟེ་ཁྱེད་ཚོ་ལ་ཕྱིར་ལོག་པར་བྱ། དེ་ནས་ང་རང་གང་  
 དུ་ཡོད་པ་དེར་ཁྱེད་ཚོ་འདྲ་ཡོད་པར་འགྱུར། <sup>4</sup> ང་རང་འགོ་རྒྱུ་ཡིན་པའི་ལམ་དེ་ཁྱེད་ཚོས་ཤེས་ཤིང་ཞེས་གསུངས་  
 པ་དང་། <sup>5</sup> རྩོམ་ཁོང་ལ་“གཙོ་བོ་ལགས། ཁྱེད་རང་གང་དུ་ལེགས་པ་ང་ཚོས་མི་ཤེས་ཏེ་ལམ་དེ་རྩོམ་  
 ཤེས་ཤིང་ཞེས་ཞུས། <sup>6</sup> ལན་དུ་ཡེ་ལུས་“ང་ནི་ལམ་དང་། བདེན་པ་ཉིད། དཔག་ཏུ་མེད་པའི་ཚོའང་ཡིན།  
 ང་མ་བརྒྱད་པར་སྐྱ་ཡང་ཡབ་ཀྱི་དུང་དུ་འགྲོ་བའི་ལམ་མེད་དོ། <sup>7</sup> ཁྱེད་ཚོས་ང་འོ་ཤེས་ཡོད་ན། ངའི་ཡབ་  
 གྲུང་འོ་ཤེས་ཡོད། ད་ནས་བཟུང་ཁྱེད་ཚོས་ཁོང་འོ་ཤེས་པ་དང་མཐོང་སྤྱོད་ཡོད་དོ”ཅེས་གསུངས་པ་དང་།  
<sup>8</sup> མི་ལོག་གིས་“གཙོ་བོ་ལགས། ཡབ་དེ་ང་ཚོ་ལ་སྟོན་པར་མཛོད་དང་། ཚོམ་པར་འགྱུར་”ཞེས་བཤད།  
<sup>9</sup> ཡེ་ལུས་“མི་ལོག། ང་རང་ཁྱེད་ཚོ་དང་མཉམ་དུ་ཡུན་རིང་པོར་བསྐྱེད་གྲུང་། ཁྱེད་གིས་ད་དུང་ང་སྐྱ་  
 ཡིན་པ་མི་ཤེས་སམ། ང་མཐོང་མཁན་དེས་ཡབ་མཐོང་བས། ཁྱེད་གིས་ཅིའི་ཕྱིར་ཡབ་དེ་ང་ཚོ་ལ་སྟོན་པར་  
 མཛོད་ཅེས་ཟེར། <sup>10</sup> ཁྱེད་གིས་ང་ཡབ་ཀྱི་ནང་ན་ཡོད་པ་དང་ཡབ་འདི་ནང་ན་ཡོད་པར་དད་པ་མི་བྱེད་དམ།  
 ངས་ཁྱེད་ཚོར་བཤད་པའི་གཏམ་དེ་རྣམས་ང་རང་རང་ཐོག་ནས་མ་བཤད་དེ། ཡབ་འདི་ནང་དུ་གནས་པ་དེས་  
 རང་གི་ལས་རྣམས་མཛོད། <sup>11</sup> ང་ཡབ་ཀྱི་ནང་ན་ཡོད་པ་དང་ཡབ་འདི་ནང་ན་ཡོད་པར་ཡིད་ཆེས་ཤིག་ དེ་མ་  
 བྱས་ན་འང་ངས་བྱས་པའི་འཕྲིན་ལས་ཉིད་ཀྱི་ཕྱིར་ཡིད་ཆེས་གྱིས། <sup>12</sup> ངས་ཁྱེད་ཚོ་ལ་བདེན་པ་བདེན་པར་ཟེར་  
 རྒྱུར། ང་ལ་དད་པ་བྱེད་མཁན་དེས་ངས་གང་བྱས་པ་བཞིན་དུ་བྱེད་པ་མ་ཟེར། དེ་ལས་ཆེ་བའི་འཕྲིན་ལས་གྲུང་  
 བྱེད་པར་འགྱུར། ཅི་ལགས་ཟེར་ན། ང་ཡབ་ཀྱི་དུང་དུ་འགྲོ་བའི་ཕྱིར་རོ། <sup>13</sup> ཡང་ཡབ་ཀྱི་གཟི་བརྗིད་ནི་སྐྱས་  
 བརྒྱད་ནས་མཛོད་པར་འགྱུར་བའི་ཕྱིར། ཁྱེད་ཚོས་ངའི་མིང་ལ་བརྟེན་ནས་གང་ཞིག་ཞུས་གྲུང་ངས་དེ་བཞིན་དུ་  
 རྒྱུབ་པར་བྱ། <sup>14</sup> ཁྱེད་ཚོས་ངའི་མིང་ཐོག་ནས་དོན་གང་ཞིག་ཞུས་ན་འང་ངས་དེ་ལྟར་བྱ།

Vocabulary Practice

Exercise 2:

Use the vocabulary words provided to complete the following sentences taken from the text above (change the form as necessary). Try and do them from memory (without looking at the text).

among	to prepare	from now on	about to	to trust	
just	even	at least	except	troubled	enough

1. Jesus said we should not let our hearts be \_\_\_\_\_.
2. Jesus said that we should \_\_\_\_\_ in him as well as in God.
3. Jesus said that when he returned to God, he would \_\_\_\_\_ a place for those who follow him.
4. Jesus said that he was the way to God. There is no other way \_\_\_\_\_ through Jesus.
5. Jesus said that because we know him, \_\_\_\_\_ we also can know God.
6. Philip said “Lord, show us the Father and that will be \_\_\_\_\_ for us.”
7. Jesus was surprised by what Philip said because Jesus had been \_\_\_\_\_ them for a long time.
8. Because God was in Jesus, the words Jesus spoke were not \_\_\_\_\_ his own.
9. Jesus wanted his disciples to \_\_\_\_\_ believe that the miracles were from God.
10. The disciples listened carefully when Jesus said, “What I’m \_\_\_\_\_ tell you is true.”
11. Jesus told his disciples that they would do \_\_\_\_\_ greater things because he was going to be with the Father.

### Exercise 3:

Practice every day usage of these words by using the vocabulary words in the box to complete the following sentences (change the form as necessary).

among	from now on	about to	to trust	to prepare	
except	just	even	at least	troubled	enough

1. This train can travel \_\_\_\_\_ faster.
2. We have \_\_\_\_\_ money to travel for three weeks.
3. He does not speak \_\_\_\_\_ English.
4. I am \_\_\_\_\_ give my mother a phone call. Can you wait?
5. Because he was \_\_\_\_\_ friends, he wasn't afraid to share his ideas.
6. Do you \_\_\_\_\_ your children to tell you the truth?
7. \_\_\_\_\_ we are going to exercise every morning.
8. I can't drink anything \_\_\_\_\_ water.
9. You should \_\_\_\_\_ stay and have dinner with us.
10. Good teachers \_\_\_\_\_ their lessons several weeks before class.
11. She was very \_\_\_\_\_ when she heard the news about the earthquake.

### Comprehension Questions

1. Why should the disciples not be troubled?
2. Where was Jesus planning to go?
3. What will Jesus do when he comes back?
4. What is the way to the Father (God)?
5. What did Phillip want Jesus to show them?
6. Who lives inside of Jesus?
7. Where is Jesus now?

### Deeper Understanding

1. Thomas said he did not know where Jesus was going. Where was Jesus going?
2. Why did Jesus say that knowing him was the same as knowing the Father? Why was seeing Jesus the same as seeing the Father?
3. What do the miracles show?
4. Can miracles be done today?
5. Why does Jesus do the things he does?
6. What does it mean to ask for something in Jesus' name?

### Beyond the Text

1. What does Jesus mean when he says, "I am the way and the truth and the life. No one comes to the Father except through me."
2. How can we know the Father (God) today?
3. Who will Jesus take with him to the Father (God) when he returns?
4. Do you know how to become a follower of Jesus?

### Answers

#### Exercise 1:

1. E   2. H   3. A   4. J   5. B   6. G   7. I  
8. C   9. D   10. F   11. K

#### Exercise 2:

1. troubled   2. trust   3. prepare   4. except   5. from now on  
6. enough   7. among   8. just   9. at least   10. about to  
11. even

#### Exercise 3:

1. even   2. enough   3. just   4. about to   5. among  
6. trust   7. from now on   8. except   9. at least  
10. prepare   11. troubled

### Comprehension Questions:

1. There is nothing God can't do. If God is with them, they don't need to be afraid.
2. To his Father's house to prepare rooms for the disciples.
3. Jesus will take his disciples to his Father's house to be together with him.
4. The way to the Father is through Jesus. Jesus has made the only way to God.
5. Phillip wanted to see God (the Father).
6. The Father (God).
7. He is in heaven with the Father (God).

### Deeper Understanding:

1. When Jesus talked about going to his Father's house, he was talking about going to heaven. This is because Jesus talked about God as his Father, and God is in heaven. After his death and resurrection, Jesus went to heaven. Jesus is there now preparing a place (rooms) for those who have chosen to follow him. In the future he will come again to take his followers to live with him there.
2. The Father was in Jesus and Jesus was in the Father. Jesus taught that he was one with the Father (God). Because they are One, anyone who listened to the words of Jesus was listening to the words of God. Because Jesus is God in human form, anyone who saw the things that Jesus did was watching God at work.
3. Miracles are things which are beyond the natural. Miracles require a power beyond what humans have. Jesus had a power that was more than human. Jesus said the miracles he performed showed that God was in him doing the work. Jesus performed these miracles to help us understand that he was God living on this earth as a man.
4. Jesus said that it was God in him that performed the miracles (God was doing the work). God has not changed. God is still present in the world today. God can still perform miracles.
5. Jesus speaks and acts to bring glory to God.
6. We are asking that God would work through us to do the thing that he (Jesus) would do. In the question above, it was shown that Jesus always acted to bring glory to God. Therefore, when we ask in Jesus' name, we are asking that only those things which bring glory to God should be done.

## Chapter 11

# The Farmer and the Seed

---

### Pre-Reading

1. What are the different ways that Tibetan farmers plant their seed?
2. How would you describe the farmland in Tibet?
3. What things make it difficult for crops to grow?

### Vocabulary Definitions

#### Exercise 1:

In the parenthesis next to the following vocabulary words, write the letter of its corresponding definition. In addition, write the Tibetan translation of the vocabulary word in the space to the right. One has been done for you. Use a dictionary to look-up words you don't know.

- |                             |       |  |
|-----------------------------|-------|--|
| 1. shore ( )                | _____ | A. to harm or damage by fire or heat                                       |
| 2. edge ( )                 | _____ | B. part of a plant that is underground                                     |
| 3. farmer ( )               | _____ | C. multiply by “#” (10 times means: 10 x ___ )                             |
| 4. to scatter ( )           | _____ | D. the place/line where a surface (e.g. the top of a table) begins or ends |
| 5. rocky ( )                | _____ | E. things like those being talked about                                    |
| 6. soil ( )                 | _____ | F. to throw in all directions  |
| 7. to burn ( )              | _____ | G. a person who grows crops and or raises animals                          |
| 8. to dry up ( )            | _____ | H. to want something VERY much   |
| 9. root ( B )               | ལྗང་  | I. not true  |
| 10. to crowd out ( )        | _____ | J. to push something out from an area                                      |
| 11. grain ( )               | _____ | K. describes an area full of stones or rocks                               |
| 12. “#” times ( )           | _____ | L. the land next to a lake, river, ocean, etc.                             |
| 13. false ( )               | _____ | M. to make all the water come out of something                             |
| 14. to long for ( )         | _____ | N. seeds of plants used for food   |
| 15. the kinds of things ( ) | _____ | O. the top layer of ground where plants grow                               |

Mark 4:1-11

4 Again Jesus began to teach by the Sea of Galilee. The crowd that gathered around him was very large. So he got into a boat. He sat down in it out on the lake. All the people were along the shore at the water's edge. 2 He taught them many things by using stories.

In his teaching he said, 3 "Listen! A farmer went out to plant his seed. 4 He scattered the seed on the ground. Some fell on a path. Birds came and ate it up. 5 Some seed fell on rocky places, where there wasn't much soil. The plants came up quickly, because the soil wasn't deep. 6 When the sun came up, it burned the plants. They dried up because they had no roots. 7 Other seed fell among thorns. The thorns grew up and crowded out the plants. So the plants did not bear grain. 8 Still other seed fell on good soil. It grew up and produced a crop 30, 60, or even 100 times more than the farmer planted."

9 Then Jesus said, "Those who have ears should listen."

10 Later Jesus was alone. The Twelve asked him about the stories. So did the others around him. 11 He told them, "The secret of God's kingdom has been given to you. But to outsiders everything is told by using stories."

Mark 4:13-20

13 Then Jesus said to them, "Don't you understand this story? Then how will you understand any stories of this kind? 14 The seed the farmer plants is God's message. 15 What is seed scattered on a path like? The message is planted. The people hear the message. Then Satan comes. He takes away the message that was planted in them. 16 And what is seed scattered on rocky places like? The people hear the message. At once they receive it with joy. 17 But they have no roots. So they last only a short time. They quickly fall away from the faith when trouble or suffering comes because of the message. 18 And what is seed scattered among thorns like? The people hear the message. 19 But then the worries of this life come to them. Wealth comes with its false promises. The people also long for other things. All of those are the kinds of things that crowd out the message. They keep it from producing fruit. 20 And what is seed scattered on good soil like? The people hear the message. They accept it. They produce a good crop 30, 60, or even 100 times more than the farmer planted."

New International Reader's Version® (NIRV®, 1996)

4:1-11

1 དེ་ནས་ཡང་ཡེ་ཤུས་གྲ་ལིལ་མཚོའི་འགྲམ་དུ་མི་དེ་ཚོ་ལ་ཚོས་བསྟན་ཏེ། མི་མང་པོ་གནས་དེར་འཛོམས་པས་ ཁོང་གྲུ་ཞིག་གི་ནང་དུ་བཞུགས་པ་དང་། མི་ཚོགས་ཚང་མ་མཚོ་འགྲམ་ལ་བསྟན། 2 ཁོང་གིས་དཔེ་སྟོན་ནས་ ཚོས་མང་པོ་གསུངས་པ་སྟེ། 3 “དེ་ཉོན་ཅིག་ རྩོན་ས་བོན་འདེབས་མཁན་ཞིག་ས་བོན་འདེབས་པར་ཕྱིན། 4 ས་བོན་གཏོར་བའི་སྐབས་སུ། ས་བོན་ཁ་གསལ་ལམ་ཁར་འཕོར་བ་བྱ་ཚོ་འོངས་ནས་བཟས་པ་དང་། 5 ཁ་ གསལ་ནི་ས་མང་པོ་མེད་པའི་བྲག་གི་སྟེང་ལ་འཕོར་ཞིང་སའི་གཏོར་རིང་པོ་མེད་པས་ཡར་སྐྱེས་པ་མཁྲོགས་ཀྱང་། 6 ཉི་མ་གར་ནས་ཚོགས་ལྟ་བུ་བ་གཏོར་རིང་པོ་མེད་པས་བསྐྱམས། 7 ས་བོན་ཁ་གསལ་ཚོར་མའི་ནང་དུ་འཕོར་ ཞིང་ཚོར་མ་སྐྱེས་ཏེ་སྐྱིབ་ནས་འབྲས་བུ་མ་སྐྱིན། 8 ཡང་ས་བོན་ཁ་གསལ་ས་རྒྱ་བཟང་པོའི་ནང་དུ་བཞུགས་ནས་ ཚོར་སྐྱེས་ཤིང་འབྲས་བུ་སྐྱིན་ཏེ། འབྲས་བུ་ཁ་གསལ་ལྗེ་བསྐྱེད་པར་གསལ་ལྗེ་བསྐྱེད་ཀྱང་། ཁ་གསལ་ལྗེ་བ་ བརྒྱ་བཅས་སྐྱིན་ནོ”ཞེས་དང་། 9 མཇུག་ཏུ་ཁོང་གིས་“རྣ་བ་ཡོད་པ་རྣམས་ཀྱིས་ཉོན་ཅིག”ཅེས་གསུངས། 10 ཡེ་ཤུ་གཅིག་ལུང་བཞུགས་དུས་ཁོང་གི་ཉེ་གནས་བཅུ་གཉིས་པོ་དང་རྗེས་འབྲང་བ་རྣམས་ཀྱིས་ཁོང་ལ་དཔེ་འདོན་ དོན་ཅི་ཡིན་པ་དྲིས་པའི་སྐབས། 11 ཁོང་གིས་“དགོན་མཚོག་གི་རྒྱལ་སྲིད་ཀྱི་གསང་བ་དེ་ཁྱེད་ཚོ་ལ་བསྟན་པ་ ཡིན། འོན་ཀྱང་ཕྱི་ཕྱོགས་ཀྱི་མི་རྣམས་ལ་ཐམས་ཅད་དཔེ་འདོན་ནས་བསྟན།

4:13-20

13 ཡང་ཁོང་གིས་“ཁྱེད་ཚོས་དཔེ་འདོན་དོན་ཅི་གོ་ཤིང་། འོན་པོ་ཐམས་ཅད་ཀྱི་དོན་རྗེ་སྟེ་ཤེས་བྱུང། 14 དེ་ནི་ཞིང་འདེབས་མཁན་གྱིས་ས་བོན་བཏབ་པ་ནི་དགོན་མཚོག་གི་བཀའ་དང་འདྲ་བ་ཡིན་ཏེ། 15 ལམ་ཁར་ འཕོར་བ་ནི་མི་ལ་ལས་དགོན་མཚོག་གི་བཀའ་དེ་ཐོས་མ་ཐག་བདུད་སྟེ་ཉོན་ཡོང་ནས་དེའི་སེམས་ནང་གི་བཀའ་ ཕྱོགས་ནས་ཁྱེད་སོང་བ་དང་འདྲ་བ་ཡིན། 16 དེ་བཞིན་དུ་བྲག་ཡོད་པའི་ས་ལ་འཕོར་བ་ནི་ཡང་མི་ལ་ལས་ དགོན་མཚོག་གི་བཀའ་དེ་ཐོས་མ་ཐག་སེམས་དགའ་བའི་ངང་ནས་ངས་ན་ཡང་། 17 རང་གི་སེམས་ནང་ལ་རྩ་བ་ གཏོར་རིང་པོ་རྒྱགས་མེད་པས། དུས་སྤང་དུ་ལ་གནས་ཀྱང་བཀའ་དེའི་དོན་དུ་སྐྱེག་བསྐྱེད་དང་གཞོན་འཚོ་འབྲུང་ སྐབས་དང་པ་ཉམས་པར་གྱུར་བ་དང་འདྲ། 18 ཡང་ཚོར་མའི་ནང་དུ་འཕོར་བ་ནི་མི་ལ་ལས་དགོན་མཚོག་གི་ བཀའ་དེ་ཐོས་རྗེས། 19 འཚོ་བའི་སེམས་བྱུང་དང་རྒྱུ་ལོར་གྱི་བསྐྱེད་ཀྱི་འདོད་པ་སྐྱ་ཚོགས་ཀྱིས་བཀའ་ མཚོག་ནས་འབྲས་བུ་སྐྱིན་པ་ལྟར་བཏབ་པ་དང་འདྲ་བ་ཡིན། 20 ས་རྒྱ་བཟང་པོ་ལ་འཕོར་བ་ནི་ཡང་མི་ལ་ལས་དགོན་ མཚོག་གི་བཀའ་དེ་ཐོས་ནས་དཔེ་འདོན་ཉམས་སུ་ངས་ཏེ་འབྲས་བུ་སྐྱིན་བུ་བ་རྣམས་ཡིན་ཏེ། འབྲས་བུ་ཁ་ གསལ་ལྗེ་བ་སྐྱེད་པར་གསལ་ལྗེ་བསྐྱེད་ཀྱང་། ཁ་གསལ་ལྗེ་བ་བརྒྱ་བཅས་སྐྱིན་པ་སྟེ་ཡིན་ནོ”ཞེས་གསུངས།

## Vocabulary Practice

### Exercise 2:

Use the vocabulary words provided to complete the following sentences taken from the text above (change the form as necessary). Try and do them from memory (without looking at the text).

soil	to scatter	rocky	to burn	roots	edge
to crowd out		to dry up	farmer	shore	grain
“#” times	false	to long for	the kinds of things		

- Jesus was teaching along the \_\_\_\_\_ of the Sea of Galilee.
- The people were standing by the water’s \_\_\_\_\_.
- Jesus tells the story about a \_\_\_\_\_ planting seeds.
- The farmer \_\_\_\_\_ the seeds in many different kinds of soil.
- The sun \_\_\_\_\_ the plants in the rocky soil.
- The plants \_\_\_\_\_ because they had no \_\_\_\_\_.
- Thorns \_\_\_\_\_ some of the plants, so they did not bear \_\_\_\_\_.
- The seed that falls on the \_\_\_\_\_ soil is like people who receive the message with joy at first but fall away when suffering comes.
- ‘Wealth will give you all that you need’ is one example of a \_\_\_\_\_ promise.
- People who \_\_\_\_\_ wealth are like the seed planted among thorns.
- Worries and wealth are \_\_\_\_\_ that don’t let the message produce fruit.
- The seed planted in good \_\_\_\_\_ is like people who hear the message and accept it.
- The good soil produces a crop that is 30, 60, or even 100 \_\_\_\_\_ more than the farmer planted.

### Exercise 3:

Practice every day usage of these words by using the vocabulary words in the box to complete the following sentences (change the form as necessary).

soil	to scatter	rocky	to burn	roots	edge
to crowd out		to dry up	farmer	shore	grain
“#” times	false	to long for	the kinds of things		

- It rained this morning but the hot sun has already \_\_\_\_\_ the water.
- That soil is very \_\_\_\_\_! It will be difficult to plant crops there.
- After the weeds are all taken out, they \_\_\_\_\_ them in fires by the side of the road.
- Many people have a \_\_\_\_\_ idea about money. They think it will bring them happiness and security.
- He has ten \_\_\_\_\_ more yaks than me.
- Those trees have long \_\_\_\_\_ that go down very deep, so they can survive for a long time without rain.
- The fun evening with family and friends \_\_\_\_\_ all of his worries.
- After the party, trash was \_\_\_\_\_ all over the classroom.
- They stood on the \_\_\_\_\_ and threw rocks in the river.
- Those flowers won’t grow well in sand. You’ll need to plant them in a place with good \_\_\_\_\_.
- My grandfather was a \_\_\_\_\_. He grew barley and potatoes.
- What are \_\_\_\_\_ that make you happy?
- The baby bumped his head on the \_\_\_\_\_ of the table and began to cry.
- The farmers filled the truck with \_\_\_\_\_ and took it to the market.
- Those who \_\_\_\_\_ an understanding of Jesus will find joy and purpose in life.

## Comprehension Questions

1. Where did Jesus teach this story?
2. Why did Jesus get into the boat?
3. What did the farmer go out to do?
4. The seeds fell in different places:
  - a. In what different kinds of places did the seeds fall?
  - b. What happened to each of the seeds?
5. Did the disciples understand the meaning of the story?
6. The seeds represent God's message to the world. Jesus describes the different ways people respond to the message (the different soils/lives where the seed/message falls).
  - a. Look at what Jesus says about the seed that falls on the three different soils: path, rocky places, and among thorns. What are the three different responses people have after they "hear the message"?
  - b. How about the seed on good soil? Describe the response of these people when they "hear the message."

## Deeper Understanding

1. What might be some reasons for why Jesus got into the boat?
2. What is a big difference between the seed on the path and the seed in the rocky soil?
3. What is a big difference between the plant in the rocky soil and the plant in the thorns?
4. What is a big difference between the plant in the thorns and the plant in good soil?

## Beyond the Text

1. The seed on the path never enters the soil (the message never enters the heart). What are reasons people don't accept the message at all (ways that Satan takes it away)?
2. The seed in the rocky soil begins to grow, but dies when the sun comes out (the people reject the message when difficult situations occur). What kind of trouble or suffering can you think of that would cause a person to reject the message after they have received it?
3. The seed in the thorns begins to grow but does not produce any grain (the message is NOT rejected, but it is not shared with others). What things make people too busy to find time to share God's message with others?
4. The farmer scattered his seed everywhere, letting it fall on all kinds of ground. Who does God want to hear his message?
5. Which one of the four seeds represents your life?

## Answers

### Exercise 1:

1. L   2. D   3. G   4. F   5. K   6. O   7. A  
8. M   9. B   10. J   11. N   12. C   13. I   14. H   15. E

### Exercise 2:

1. shore   2. edge   3. farmer   4. scattered   5. burned up  
6. dried up; roots   7. crowded out; grain   8. rocky  
9. false   10. long for   11. the kinds of things   12. soil  
13. times



### Comprehension Questions:

1. Along the shore of the Sea of Galilee.
2. Because of the large crowd that had gathered around him.
3. He went out to plant his seed.
4. The seeds:
  - a. Where they fell:
    - i. On a path;
    - ii. on rocky places;
    - iii. among thorns;
    - iv. on good soil.
  - b. What happened to the seeds:
    - i. birds ate it;
    - ii. the sun burned it up;
    - iii. it did not bear grain;
    - iv. it produced a crop 30, 60, or even 100 times more.
5. The disciples did not understand the story, so Jesus explained it to them.
6. Response to the message:
  - a. People don't follow God's message because:
    - i. Satan takes away the message;
    - ii. trouble or suffering enter the person's life and take away the message;
    - iii. worry, wealth and longing for other things keep the message from producing fruit.
  - b. The person who accepts and follows God's message shares it with others, and many accept the message as well (30, 60, or even 100 times more).

### Deeper Understanding:

1. Perhaps Jesus was getting pushed back into the water and needed some space from the crowd, or possibly the crowd was large and gathered around him so that others in the back could not hear. With Jesus in the boat the crowd could not push him back further and more people would be able to hear.
2. The seed on the path never began to grow. It was taken before it could enter the soil. The seed in the rocky soil entered the soil and began to grow.
3. The plant in the rocky soil died, however the plant in the thorns continued to live.
4. The plant in the thorns did not bear grain, but the plant in the good soil produced a crop 30, 60, or even 100 times more.

## Chapter 12

# Jesus Ascends into Heaven

### Pre-Reading

1. What is the worst part about not being near someone you care about? What do you do when you miss that person?
2. How do you feel when you know someone you love is going to leave? How do you feel when you know they will come back again someday?

### Vocabulary Definitions

#### Exercise 1:

Write the number of the definition in the parenthesis next to the corresponding vocabulary word. In addition, write the Tibetan translation of the vocabulary word in the space at the right of the definition. One has been done for you. Use a dictionary to look-up words you don't know.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. to prove ( ) _____                    | A. power to give orders to do something or control things               |
| 2. period ( ) _____                      | B. to dip into; to immerse in (water or something else)                 |
| 3. to baptize ( ) _____                  | C. a length of time when something happens                              |
| 4. authority ( ) _____                   | D. people who have seen something with their own eyes and tell about it |
| 5. witness ( ) _____                     | E. to show something is true or right using evidence                    |
| 6. concerned ( ) _____                   | F. to be or come into sight; to show up                                 |
| 7. sight ( ) _____                       | G. anxious or worried   |
| 8. suffering ( ) _____                   | H. 12 of Jesus' disciples sent to tell the Good News to everyone        |
| 9. to appear ( F ) <u>མཛོད་པར་</u> _____ | I. ability to see something   |
| 10. apostles ( ) _____                   | J. the state of experiencing pain or unhappiness                        |

**These are five place names mentioned in the story:**

Galilee—the area where Jesus grew up

Jerusalem—the capital city of Israel

Judea—an area or territory in the land of Israel

Samaria—an area in the north of Israel

Israel—the whole country where the Hebrew people lived (including Judea, Samaria etc).

Try and find these places in the map at the back of the book.

**Text: Acts 1:1-11**

<sup>1</sup> Theophilus, I wrote about Jesus in my earlier book. I wrote about all he did and taught <sup>2</sup> until the day he was taken up to heaven. Before Jesus left, he gave orders to the apostles he had chosen. He did this through the Holy Spirit. <sup>3</sup> After his suffering and death, he appeared to them. In many ways he proved that he was alive. He appeared to them over a period of 40 days. During that time he spoke about God’s kingdom.

<sup>4</sup> One day Jesus was eating with them. He gave them a command. “Do not leave Jerusalem,” he said. “Wait for the gift my Father promised. You have heard me talk about it. <sup>5</sup> John baptized with water. But in a few days you will be baptized with the Holy Spirit.”

<sup>6</sup> When the apostles met together, they asked Jesus a question. “Lord,” they said, “are you going to give the kingdom back to Israel now?”

<sup>7</sup> He said to them, “You should not be concerned about times or dates. The Father has set them by his own authority. <sup>8</sup> But you will receive power when the Holy Spirit comes on you. Then you will be my witnesses in Jerusalem. You will be my witnesses in all Judea and Samaria. And you will be my witnesses from one end of the earth to the other.”

<sup>9</sup> After Jesus said this, he was taken up to heaven. They watched until a cloud hid him from their sight.

<sup>10</sup> While he was going up, they kept on looking at the sky. Suddenly two men dressed in white clothing stood beside them. <sup>11</sup> “Men of Galilee,” they said, “why do you stand here looking at the sky? Jesus has been taken away from you into heaven. But he will come back in the same way you saw him go.”

*New International Reader’s Version® (NIRV®, 1996)*

**མཛད་པ། 1:1-11 使徒行传 1:1-11**

<sup>1-2</sup> གུ་མི་རྗེ་གྲོ་མི་ལུ། གཙོ་བོ་ཡེ་ཤུ་གང་མཛད་པ་དང་ཚོས་གང་གསུངས་པ་ཐམས་ཅད་འགོ་བརྩམས་པ་  
ནས་བཟུང་། ཁོང་གིས་བདམས་པའི་སྐྱེ་ཚབ་རྣམས་ལ་དམ་པའི་བྱ་གསུང་ཉིད་ཐོག་ནས་བཀའ་གནང་བའི་རྗེས་སུ་  
དགོན་མཚོག་གི་ཞིང་ཁམས་ལ་མ་འཕགས་པའི་ཉིན་མོའི་བར་དུ། <sup>3</sup> སྐུ་ག་བསྐྱེལ་  
ཐྱོང་བའི་རྗེས་སུ་ཁོང་འཆི་བ་ནས་སྐར་གསོན་དུ་གྱུར་བའི་ར་སྐྱོད་མང་བོ་སྐྱེ་ཚབ་རྣམས་ལ་གསལ་པོར་བསྟན་ཞིང་།  
ཉིན་བཞི་བརྒྱའི་རིང་ཁོང་གིས་ཁོ་ཚོར་མཛོན་པར་མཛད་དེ་དགོན་མཚོག་གི་རྒྱལ་སྤིང་གི་སྐོར་གསུངས། <sup>4</sup> ཡང་  
ཁོ་ཚོ་དང་མཉམ་དུ་བཞུགས་པའི་དུས་ཤིག་ལ་ཁོང་གིས་ “ངས་ཁྱེད་ཚོར་སྐར་བཤད་པ་ལྟར་ངའི་ཡབ་ཀྱིས་ཞུ་  
ཆད་གནང་བ་དེ་མ་འགྲུབ་པའི་བར་དུ་ཡེ་ཤུ་ཤེས་གོང་ཁྱེད་ནས་མ་བུ་ལ་བར་སྐྱུག་སྟེ་སྤོང་ཅིག། <sup>5</sup> ཡེ་ཉ་ནན་  
གིས་རྒྱལ་སྤིང་གསུངས་གསོལ་གནང་བར་འགྲུར་” ཞེས་གསུངས། <sup>6</sup> ཡང་ལྟན་དུ་འཛོམས་ནས་ཁོ་ཚོས་ཁོང་ལ་ “གཙོ་བོ།  
ད་ཁྱེད་ཀྱིས་ཡེ་ཉ་དུ་པའི་རྒྱལ་སྤིང་སྐར་གསོན་མཛད་དམ་” ཞེས་དྲིས་པས། <sup>7</sup> ལན་དུ་ཁོང་གིས་ “ཡབ་ཀྱིས་ངར་  
གི་དབང་ཆ་ལ་བརྟེན་ནས་བཀོད་པའི་དུས་དང་ནམ་དུས་ནི་ཁྱེད་ཀྱིས་ཤེས་པར་མི་རུང་། <sup>8</sup> ཡང་དམ་པའི་བྱ་གསུངས་  
ཉིད་ཁྱེད་རྣམས་ལ་འབབ་པའི་ཚེ་ཁྱེད་ཚོར་རྣམས་མཐུ་འཐོབ་པས། ཡེ་ཤུ་ཤེས་དང་། ཡེ་ཉ་དུ་ཡུལ་ཡོངས་  
ས་མར་ཡུ་ཡུལ། ས་གཞི་མཐའ་མའི་བར་དུ་ངའི་དབང་བོ་ཡིན་པར་འགྲུར་” ཞེས་གསུངས་པའི་རྗེས་སུ།  
<sup>9</sup> ཁོ་ཚོའི་མཐོང་སར་ཁོང་ཡར་འཕགས་ནས་སྤྱིན་པ་ཞིག་གིས་ཁོང་བསུས་ཏེ་མི་མཐོང་བར་འགྲུར། <sup>10</sup> ཁོ་  
ཚོས་ནམ་མཁའི་ཕྱོགས་སུ་ནན་གིས་བལྟས་ཏེ་ཁོང་ཡར་ཕེབས་དུས་གྲོ་བུར་དུ་གོས་དཀར་བོ་གྲོན་པའི་མི་གཉིས་  
དེ་ཚོའི་འགྲམ་དུ་ཐོན། <sup>11</sup> ཁོང་ཚོས་ “གུ་ག་ལེལ་པ་རྣམས། ཅིའི་ཕྱིར་བསྟན་དེ་ནམ་མཁའི་ཕྱོགས་སུ་ལྷ།  
ཁྱེད་ཚོའི་མདུན་ནས་དགོན་མཚོག་གི་ཞིང་ཁམས་སུ་ཡར་འཕགས་པ་གཙོ་བོ་ཡེ་ཤུ་ཉིད། རི་ལྟར་ཞིང་ཁམས་  
སུ་འཕགས་པ་མཐོང་བ་བཞིན། དེ་ལྟར་ཕྱིར་ལོག་ཐེབས་ངེས་ཡིན་” ཞེས་གསུངས་སོ།།

## Vocabulary Practice

### Exercise 2:

Use the vocabulary words provided to complete the following sentences taken from the text above (change the form as necessary). Try and do them from memory (without looking at the text).

to prove    period    be baptized    authority    witnesses    concerned  
sight    suffering    to appear    apostles

1. Jesus gave orders to the \_\_\_\_\_ he had chosen.
2. After his \_\_\_\_\_ and death he \_\_\_\_\_ to his apostles.
3. Jesus used many ways to \_\_\_\_\_ that he was alive.
4. Jesus spent time with his apostles over a \_\_\_\_\_ of forty days and during that time spoke about God's Kingdom.
5. Jesus explained that John used water to baptize, but after a few days they would be \_\_\_\_\_ with the Holy Spirit.
6. He told them they shouldn't be \_\_\_\_\_ about times or dates the Father had set with his own \_\_\_\_\_.
7. Jesus told the apostles that they would receive the Holy Spirit and then be his \_\_\_\_\_ in Jerusalem, Judea, Samaria and from one end of the earth to the other.
8. They watched until a cloud hid him from their \_\_\_\_\_.

### Exercise 3:

Use the vocabulary words provided to complete the following sentences and practice every day usage of these words (change the form as necessary).

to prove    period    be baptized    authority    witnesses    concerned  
sight    suffering    to appear

1. My friend became a Christian and will be \_\_\_\_\_ soon! I am so happy for him.
2. That security guard is very bossy and thinks he has the \_\_\_\_\_ to tell everyone what to do!
3. After many years of \_\_\_\_\_ her grandmother finally died last week.
4. I was at University for a \_\_\_\_\_ of 4 years and during that time I made a lot of good friends.
5. That student didn't study very much and wasn't really \_\_\_\_\_ with getting good marks or doing well in the exam.
6. The man hit their cow with his car and drove away, but there were a lot of \_\_\_\_\_ who saw it and told the police. Later he was caught.
7. They didn't believe she had climbed to the top of that mountain until she showed them pictures and \_\_\_\_\_ it.
8. As you get older you may begin to lose your \_\_\_\_\_.
9. You will have to work hard if you want to buy a house. The money won't magically \_\_\_\_\_ in your hands.

## Comprehension Questions

1. What did the author of Acts write about in an earlier book?
2. Over how long of a period did Jesus appear to his disciples after his death and resurrection?
3. Jesus commanded the disciples, "Do not leave Jerusalem." Why were they to wait?
4. When did Jesus say that Israel would be given their kingdom back?
5. Where would the disciples be witnesses to the teachings of Jesus?
6. What happened as Jesus disappeared behind the clouds when returning to heaven?
7. When Jesus returns to earth, how will he come back?

## Deeper Understanding

1. Why did Jesus appear to his disciples after his resurrection?
2. Why did Jesus want the disciples to wait for the gift of the Holy Spirit?
3. How long will Jesus remain in heaven?

## Beyond the Text

1. Why did Jesus allow his disciples to see him return to heaven in the clouds?
2. Why do you think Jesus left the earth? Why didn't he stay?
3. How did people in Europe hear about Jesus? Africa? North and South America? Asia?
4. Has everyone in the world now heard about Jesus?
5. Who possessed Israel's kingdom at the time the book of Acts was written?
6. Has Israel received their kingdom back yet? If so, when?

## Answers

### Exercise 1:

1. E   2. C   3. B   4. A   5. D   6. G   7. I   8. J   9. F   10. H

### Exercise 2:

1. apostles   2. suffering; appeared   3. prove   4. period  
5. baptized   6. concerned; authority   7. witnesses   8. sight

### Exercise 3:

1. baptized   2. authority   3. suffering   4. period   5. concerned  
6. witnesses   7. proved   8. sight   9. appear

### Comprehension Questions:

1. All that Jesus did and taught before he returned to heaven.
2. 40 days.
3. They were to wait for the Father's promised gift of the Holy Spirit.
4. He did not give them a date or time. He said that this was the Father's authority to decide.
5. First in Jerusalem, then Judea, Samaria, and finally throughout the whole earth.
6. Suddenly two men dressed in white clothing stood beside them.
7. In the same way that he left the earth, he will come down from heaven through the clouds.

### Deeper Understanding:

1. He wanted to prove to them that he was alive, so he ate and talked together with them for many days.
2. He knew that the Holy Spirit would give them power to become God's witnesses to the world, helping them to know the teachings of Jesus and that he was God's son.
3. The text does not tell us. We are commanded to continue the work of being God's witnesses until Jesus returns from heaven through the clouds. Other texts tell us he could come at anytime so we should always be ready.

# Chapter 13

## The Holy Spirit Comes

### Pre-Reading

1. Have you ever seen something so strange that you have no explanation for how it could be possible?
2. How many languages do you speak? What kinds of methods have you used to learn those languages? Would it be possible for someone to suddenly start speaking another language which he or she has never studied?
3. What would happen to a person if God's spirit were to enter into him or her?

### Vocabulary Definitions

#### Exercise 1:

In the parenthesis next to the following vocabulary words, write the letter of its corresponding definition. In addition, write the Tibetan translation of the vocabulary word in the space to the right. One has been done for you. Use a dictionary to look-up words you don't know.

- |                      |          |  |
|----------------------|----------|--|
| 1. Pentecost ( )     | _____    | A. a picture in your mind that reveals what will happen in the future  |
| 2. flame ( )         | _____    | B. agreement that something or someone is good and right   |
| 3. to settle on ( )  | _____    | C. feelings that come from doing something wrong or dishonoring  |
| 4. bewildered ( )    | _____    | D. condition of your mental and physical abilities being weakened because of drinking too much alcohol (e.g. beer, wine, etc.) |
| 5. amazed ( )        | _____    | E. to give something to another person   |
| 6. drunk ( D )       | འཇམ་མཉམ་ | F. to slowly come down and rest upon something   |
| 7. vision ( )        | _____    | G. a Jewish festival which remembers (commemorates) the giving of the Ten Commandments to Moses                                |
| 8. to pour out ( )   | _____    | H. not able to understand; confused  |
| 9. wonder ( )        | _____    | I. to give in great quantities   |
| 10. to hand over ( ) | _____    | J. something that is strange or surprising   |
| 11. approval ( )     | _____    | K. to feel surprised   |
| 12. shame ( )        | _____    | L. the light or glow that comes from burning wood, gas, paper, etc.  |

**Text: Acts 2:1-8;14-24; 36-39**

#### Acts 2:1-8

<sup>1</sup> The day of Pentecost came. The believers all gathered in one place. <sup>2</sup> Suddenly a sound came from heaven. It was like a strong wind blowing. It filled the whole house where they were sitting. <sup>3</sup> They saw something that looked like tongues of fire. The flames separated and settled on each of them. <sup>4</sup> All of them were filled with the Holy Spirit. They began to speak in languages they had not known before. The Spirit gave them the ability to do this.

<sup>5</sup> Godly Jews from every country in the world were staying in Jerusalem. <sup>6</sup> A crowd came together when they heard the sound. They were bewildered because they each heard the believers speaking in their own language. <sup>7</sup> The crowd was really amazed. They asked, "Aren't all these people from Galilee?" <sup>8</sup> Why, then, do we each hear them speaking in our own native language?

#### Acts 2:14-24

<sup>14</sup> Then Peter stood up with the Eleven. In a loud voice he spoke to the crowd. "My Jewish friends," he said, "let me explain this to you. All of you who live in Jerusalem, listen carefully to what I say. <sup>15</sup> You think these people are drunk. But they aren't. It's only nine o'clock in the morning! <sup>16</sup> No, here is what the prophet Joel meant. <sup>17</sup> He said,

" 'In the last days, God says,  
I will pour out my Holy Spirit on all people.  
Your sons and daughters will prophesy.  
Your young men will see visions.  
Your old men will have dreams.

<sup>18</sup> In those days I will pour out my Spirit  
even on those who serve me, both men and women.  
When I do, they will prophesy.

<sup>19</sup> I will show wonders in the heavens above.  
I will show miraculous signs on the earth below.  
There will be blood and fire and clouds of smoke.

<sup>20</sup> The sun will become dark.  
The moon will turn red like blood.  
This will happen before the coming of the great and glorious day of the Lord.

<sup>21</sup> Everyone who calls  
on the name of the Lord will be saved.' —(Joel 2:28-32)

<sup>22</sup> "Men of Israel, listen to this! Jesus of Nazareth was a man who had God's approval. God did miracles, wonders and signs among you through Jesus. You yourselves know this. <sup>23</sup> Long ago God planned that Jesus would be handed over to you. With the help of evil people, you put Jesus to death. You nailed him to the

cross. <sup>24</sup> But God raised him from the dead. He set him free from the suffering of death. It wasn't possible for death to keep its hold on Jesus.

**Acts 2:36-39**

<sup>36</sup> “So be sure of this, all you people of Israel. You nailed Jesus to the cross. But God has made him both Lord and Christ.”

<sup>37</sup> When the people heard this, their hearts were filled with shame. They said to Peter and the other apostles, “Brothers, what should we do?”

<sup>38</sup> Peter replied, “All of you must turn away from your sins and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ. Then your sins will be forgiven. You will receive the gift of the Holy Spirit. <sup>39</sup> The promise is for you and your children. It is also for all who are far away. It is for all whom the Lord our God will choose.”

*New International Reader's Version® (NIRV®, 1996)*

**མཛད་པ། 2:1-8;14-24; 36-39    使徒行传 2:1-8;14-24; 36-39**

**2:1-8**

<sup>1</sup> ཉི་མ་ལྟ་བུ་བཅུ་པའི་དུས་ཚེན་ལ་སྤོབས་སྐྱབས་ཁོ་ཚོ་ཚང་མ་ས་ཆ་གཅིག་ཏུ་འཛོམས་པ་དང་། <sup>2</sup> སློ་བུར་དུ་  
དགོན་མཚོག་གི་ཞིང་ཁམས་ནས་ཏུར་ཏུར་དུ་རྒྱལ་པའི་རྒྱུད་དང་འབྲེལ་བའི་སྐྱ་ཞིག་བྱུང་བ་དང་། དེས་ནི་ཁོ་ཚོ་  
སྡོད་སའི་ཁང་པ་ཆ་ཚང་བྱུང་། <sup>3</sup> མི་ནང་བཞིན་གྱི་ལུ་རྒྱུ་ཁོ་ཚོའི་མཉམ་དུ་མཛོད་སྤྱོད་པ་དང་། ཉེ་སོ་སོའི་སྤྱོད་ལ་གནས། <sup>4</sup> དགོན་མཚོག་གི་དམ་པའི་ཕྱགས་ཉིད་ཀྱིས་ཁོ་ཚོ་ཚང་མ་གང་བར་གྱུར་ཞིང་།  
དམ་པའི་ཕྱགས་ཉིད་ཀྱིས་རྒྱུ་མཉམ་གནང་བ་བཞིན་དུ་ཁོ་ཚོས་སྐད་རིགས་གཞན་རྣམས་སྤྱད་ནས་སྐད་ཆ་བཤད།  
<sup>5</sup> ཡང་གནས་མཁའི་འོག་ཏུ་མི་རིགས་ཀུན་ནས་སེམས་བྱུང་བོ་དང་ཚོས་སེམས་དང་ལྡན་པའི་ཡུ་ཏུ་དུ་པ་རྣམས་  
ཡེ་རུ་ཤ་ལེམ་ལ་གནས་པ་དང་། <sup>6</sup> སྐྱ་དེ་བྱུང་བས་མི་ཚོགས་མང་པོ་ཞིག་འཛོམས་ཤིང་། དེ་རྣམས་ཀྱིས་རང་  
རང་གི་སྐད་དང་ལྡན་པ་རྣམས་ཀྱིས་བཤད་པར་བྱོས་ནས་ཐེ་ཚོམ་སྤྲོས། <sup>7</sup> ཉ་ལས་ཉེ་ཡ་མཚན་ཚེན་པོར་གྱུར་  
བས་ཁོ་ཚོས་“གཏམ་ཤོད་མཁན་འདི་ཚོ་ཚང་མ་གཤམ་ལེམ་པ་མ་ཡིན་ནམ།” <sup>8</sup> ཡང་ཁོ་ཚོས་རང་རེའི་པ་སྐད་སྤྱད་  
ནས་གཏམ་བྱེད་པར་ངོས་ཐོས་པ་དེ་ཅི་ལ་སྤྲིད།

\* ཉི་མ་ལྟ་བུ་བཅུ་པའི་དུས་ཚེན་ནི་ཡུ་ཏུ་པའི་པོ་སྐད་གི་དུས་ཚེན་ཉི་མ་ལྟ་བུ་ལྟའི་རྗེས་སུ་བྱུང་། དེ་གོ་རྒྱུ་དུས་ཚེན་ཡིན་ཏེ། མི་རིགས་སྐད་དུ་ཕན་  
དེ་གོ་སེའ་ཞེས་བྲིས།

**2:14-24**

<sup>14</sup> དེ་ནས་པེ་ཏྲོས་སྐྱ་ཚབ་བཅུ་གཅིག་པོ་དང་མཉམ་དུ་ལངས་ཏེ་སྐད་ཚེན་པོས་མི་ཚོགས་ལ་“ཡུ་ཏུ་དུ་ཡུལ་བ་དང་  
ཡེ་རུ་ཤ་ལེམ་ལ་གནས་པ་ཐམས་ཅད། རས་དོན་འདི་གསལ་བཤད་བྱེད་རྒྱུ་ཡིན་པས་ར་ལ་ནན་གྱིས་ཉོན་དང་།  
<sup>15</sup> ད་ལྟ་ཞོགས་པའི་རྒྱ་ཚོད་དགུ་པ་ལས་མ་ཡིན་པས་བྱེད་ཚོའི་སེམས་ལ་མི་འདི་ཚོ་ཚང་གིས་ར་བཟི་བར་སྐྱམ་ན་  
ཡང་དེ་ལྟར་མིན། <sup>16</sup> དེ་ལས་ལྟོག་སྟེ་བྱིས་གང་ཐོས་པ་དེ་ལུང་སྟོན་པ་ཡོ་ཞེས་གྱིས་ལུང་བསྟན་དང་མཐུན་  
ཏེ། <sup>17</sup> དགོན་མཚོག་གིས་ནམ་དུས་མཐའ་མའི་སྐབས་སུ།  
ཁོང་གི་བཀའ་བསྟུན་པ་ཡི་ཕྱགས་ཉིད་དེ།  
མི་ཡི་རིགས་ཅན་ཀུན་ལ་གནང་འགྱུར་ཏེ།  
བྱེད་ཀྱི་བུ་དང་བུ་མོས་ལུང་བསྟན་ཞིང་།  
སྐྱེས་པ་གཞོན་ནུ་རྣམས་ལ་ཞལ་གཟིགས་འོང་།  
བྱེད་ཀྱི་ཚན་ཚོན་རྣམས་ལ་མི་ལམ་འབྱུང་།  
<sup>18</sup> དུས་དེར་ང་ཡི་གཡོག་པོ་གཡོག་མོ་ལའང་།  
ང་ཡི་ཕྱགས་ཉིད་བསྟུན་གནང་འགྱུར་ནས་ཞི།  
དེ་དག་གིས་ཀྱང་ལུང་བསྟན་འཆད་པེས་ཡིན།  
<sup>19</sup> ང་ཡིས་ནམ་མཁའ་ངོ་མཚར་བྱ་བ་དང་།  
ས་སྤྱོད་འདི་རུ་གྲུབ་ཏུ་གསལ་སྟོན་པར་འགྱུར།  
འགྲུབ་དང་མེད་དུ་རྒྱུང་བར་འགྱུར།  
<sup>20</sup> གཙོ་བོའི་བྱེད་འཕགས་ཉིན་མོ་མ་ཟིན་བར།  
ཉི་མ་ལྟར་དང་ལྷོ་བ་འགྲུ་ཏུ་འགྱུར།  
<sup>21</sup> དེ་དུས་གཙོ་བོའི་མཚན་ནས་བརྗོད་མཁན་རྣམས་།  
སྐབས་ནས་ཐར་པ་ཐོབ་པར་ཐེ་ཚོམ་མེད། \*\*  
ཅེས་གསུངས་སོ། <sup>22</sup> ཀྱི་ཡི་སི་ར་ཞེས་པ་རྣམས་ལ་དེ་ཅི་གཏམ་ལ་ཉོན་ཅིག་བྱེད་ཀྱིས་ཤེས་གསལ་ལྟར་  
བྱེད་ཚོའི་དཀྱིལ་ལ་རྟེན་ཅི་ལ་ཡེ་ལུས་རྒྱས་མཐུ་ལྡན་པའི་མཛད་པ་དང་། ངོ་མཚར་ཅན་གྱི་དོན། སྐབས་  
རྣམས་བཅས་མཛད། དགོན་མཚོག་གིས་དེའི་སྐོར་ནས་གཙོ་བོ་ཡེ་ལུ་ནི་ཁོང་གིས་མངགས་པ་ཡིན་པ་གསལ་  
པོར་བསྟན། <sup>23</sup> དེ་ཡང་ཁོང་ནི་དགོན་མཚོག་གི་དགོངས་པ་དང་སྟོན་དུ་མཐུན་པ་ལྟར་བྱེད་རྣམས་ལ་གཏད་དེ།

\*\* ལུང་སྟོན་པ་ཡོ་ཞེས་ཀྱི་མདོ་ལེའུ་2 ཡང་28-32 ལ་གཟིགས།



## Comprehension Questions

1. When did all of this happen?
2. What did the believers hear?
3. What did they see?
4. What were they able to do? How?
5. Who was able to understand these believers speak?
6. What prophet did Peter quote from?
7. According to that prophet, who would God pour out his Spirit on?
8. What will people have to do to be saved?
9. How did God feel about Jesus?
10. What did God do through Jesus?
11. How did the people feel when they heard what Peter said?
12. What did Peter say they must do?
13. What two good things would they get if they did that?

## Deeper Understanding

1. What do you think the “tongues of fire” were?
2. Why do you think the crowd thought the believers were drunk?
3. How did Jesus overcome (defeat) death?
4. What does it mean for God to make Jesus both Lord and Christ?
5. The people who crucified Jesus meant it for evil but God was always in control. How do verses 23 and 24 teach us this?

## Beyond the Text

1. In chapter 11 the Apostles were told to “wait” and in this chapter the Holy Spirit finally came on the believers. It happened during the Pentecost celebration, when many Jews from other countries were visiting and helped the good news about Jesus spread to many countries when they went home. What does this teach you about God’s timing? Is there something you are waiting for and asking God for that is taking a long time?
2. Peter quoted something the prophet Joel had said hundreds of years before and it was finally coming true. What does this tell us about God? What does it tell you about his plan? His faithfulness? His promises?
3. Reread verse 36. What other ways has God turned something evil into good? Has he done this in your life?
4. Verse 5 says Peter was talking to “Godly Jews from all over the world” but then in verse 23 he says to them “you put Jesus to death. You nailed him to the cross.” Those people weren’t even in Jerusalem when Jesus was killed. In what way did they put Jesus to death? In what way did you put Jesus to death?
5. Are you afraid of dying? How do verses 21 and 24 relate to that?
6. Why do you think God gives people the Holy Spirit? How would it change you?
7. The people listening to Peter responded by saying “What shall we do?” You have also read what Peter said to them about Jesus. What will you do now?

## Answers

### Exercise 1:

1. G   2. L   3. F   4. H   5. K   6. D   7. A   8. I   9. J  
10. E   11. B   12. C

### Exercise 2:

1. Pentecost   2. flame   3. settled   4. bewildered   5. amazed  
6. drunk   7. visions   8. pour out   9. wonders   10. approval  
11. handed over   12. shame



**Exercise 3:**

- 1. amazed    2. handed over    3. pour out    4. shame    5. approval
- 6. bewildered    7. settled    8. flame    9. vision    10. drunk

**Comprehension Questions:**

1. On the day of Pentecost (a Jewish holiday).
2. A sound from heaven like a strong wind blowing.
3. Something that looked like tongues of fire that settled on each of them.
4. To speak in languages they had not known before. The Spirit gave them the ability.
5. Jews from every country in the world (in their native languages).
6. Joel.
7. All people, sons, daughters, young men, old men.
8. Call on the name of the Lord.
9. He had God’s approval.
10. Miracles, wonders and signs.
11. Their hearts were filled with shame.
12. Turn away from their sins and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ.
13. Their sins would be forgiven and they would receive the gift of the Holy Spirit.

**Deeper Understanding:**

1. A physical evidence of the Holy Spirit’s presence.
2. Maybe because they were all so excited and full of joy. With lots of people all speaking in different languages at the same time and full of happiness it must have seemed like a really amazing party!
3. God raised him and set him free from death. It wasn’t possible for death to hold Jesus.
4. Jesus has been given authority over everything on earth (Lord); and through his death and resurrection, Jesus has the power to save mankind from sin and separation from God (Christ).
5. Long ago God had planned it would happen. Evil people put Jesus to death but God raised him from the dead and set him free from the suffering of death. It was always God’s plan to use Jesus’ death and resurrection to save people from sin.

# Chapter 14

## Live by the Holy Spirit’s Power

---

*Pre-Reading*

1. Have you ever felt like you can’t control yourself? For example, you do things that you wish you didn’t do, and you don’t do the things that you wish you did?
2. What are the best characteristics or qualities a person could have? Make a list of them. Make another list of the worst characteristics people have.

*Vocabulary Definitions*

**Exercise 1:**

In the parenthesis next to the following vocabulary words, write the letter of its corresponding definition. In addition, write the Tibetan translation of the vocabulary word in the space to the right of the definition. One has been done for you. Use a dictionary to look-up words you don’t know.

- |  |  |   |
|--|--|---|
| 1. to delight ( ) _____  |  | A. wanting what someone else has                      |
| 2. war ( ) _____   |  | B. to hammer a long thin metal spike into something   |
| 3. to worship ( ) _____  |  | C. able to wait calmly and not get annoyed            |
| 4. jealousy ( A ) <span style="color: #D9534F; font-family: monospace;">ལྷན་དྲུག་</span> _____ |  | D. a period or time of fighting between countries     |
| 5. statue ( ) _____  |  | E. being kind; not loud or violent                    |
| 6. patient ( ) _____   |  | F. ability to restrain or direct your desires         |
| 7. faithful ( ) _____  |  | G. to love and honor in prayer, song, & everyday life |
| 8. gentle ( ) _____  |  | H. to walk together in rhythm or in step              |
| 9. to nail ( ) _____   |  | I. image of something made of stone, metal, or wood   |
| 10. to march ( ) _____   |  | J. sexual acts outside of marriage                    |
| 11. self control ( ) _____   |  | K. to enjoy or be very happy because of something     |
| 12. impure acts ( ) _____  |  | L. our basic desire to do evil or disobey God         |
| 13. sexual sins ( ) _____  |  | M. actions that are spiritually unclean or wrong      |
| 14. sinful nature ( ) _____  |  | N. keeping promises; doing what you said you would    |

**Text: Galatians 5:16-26**

<sup>16</sup> So I say, live by the Holy Spirit's power. Then you will not do what your sinful nature wants you to do.

<sup>17</sup> The sinful nature does not want what the Spirit delights in. And the Spirit does not want what the sinful nature delights in. The two are at war with each other. That's what makes you do what you don't want to do. <sup>18</sup> But if you are led by the Spirit, you are not under the authority of the law.

<sup>19</sup> What the sinful nature does is clear. It enjoys sexual sins, impure acts and wild living. <sup>20</sup> It worships statues of gods. It also worships evil powers. It is full of hatred and fighting. It is full of jealousy and fits of anger. It is interested only in getting ahead. It stirs up trouble. It separates people into their own little groups. <sup>21</sup> It wants what others have. It gets drunk and takes part in wild parties. It does many things of that kind. I warn you now as I did before. People who live like that will not receive God's kingdom.

<sup>22</sup> But the fruit the Holy Spirit produces is love, joy and peace. It is being patient, kind and good. It is being faithful <sup>23</sup> and gentle and having control of oneself. There is no law against things of that kind.

<sup>24</sup> Those who belong to Christ Jesus have nailed their sinful nature to his cross. They don't want what their sinful nature loves and longs for.

<sup>25</sup> Since we live by the Spirit, let us march in step with the Spirit. <sup>26</sup> Let us not become proud. Let us not make each other angry. Let us not want what belongs to others.

New International Reader's Version® (NIRV®, 1996)

**ག་ལད་ལུ་ཕྱག་པོ་ 5:16-26 ག་ལ་ཐུ་ཚིག་ 5:16-26**

<sup>16</sup> ངས་བཤད་པའི་དོན་འདི་ལྟར་ཡིན། དམ་པའི་ཐུགས་ཉིད་ཀྱི་སྣེ་ལྟོན་དང་བསྐྱོན་ཏེ་མི་ཚོ་སྐྱེ་ལ་ཞིང་། བྱེད་ཚོས་སྣེ་ལ་ཕྱོགས་ཅན་རང་གཤམ་གྱི་འདོད་པ་མི་བསྐྱེད། <sup>17</sup> གང་ཡིན་ཞེ་ན། ཐུགས་ཅན་རང་གཤམ་གྱིས་དམ་པའི་ཐུགས་ཉིད་ལ་ཚོད་ལོང་། དམ་པའི་ཐུགས་ཉིད་ཀྱིས་སྣེ་ལ་ཕྱོགས་ཅན་རང་གཤམ་ལ་ཡང་ཚོད་ཏེ། བྱེད་ཚོས་རང་གི་འདོད་པ་ལྟར་མི་བྱེད་པའི་ཕྱིར་དེ་གཉིས་གཅིག་གིས་གཅིག་ལ་ཚོད་ལ། <sup>18</sup> འོན་ཀྱང་དམ་པའི་ཐུགས་ཉིད་ཀྱིས་བྱེད་ཚུལ་ལྟོན་པར། ཚོས་བྱེད་ཀྱི་དབང་འོག་ཏུ་མེད། <sup>19</sup> ཐུགས་ཅན་རང་གཤམ་གྱི་ལས་ལྡན་གསལ་པོ་ཡིན་ཏེ། འོག་གཡིམ་དང་། མི་གཙང་བ། བག་མེད་སྤྱོད་པ། <sup>20</sup> ལྷ་ལ་རྟེན་པ། མཐུ་སྐྱེས་སུ་སྣང་གི་འཕྲུག་ཕྱོགས་ལ་ལྷན་པ་ལྟར་། ཐུགས་ཉིད་ཀྱིས་དེ་དང་ལྡན་པར། ཐུགས་ཉིད་དང་བསྐྱོན་ཏེ་མི་ཚོ་སྐྱེ་ལ་དགོས། <sup>26</sup> ང་ཚོས་རང་བསྐྱོན་གྱིང་པའམ། གཞན་ལ་ལྷུག་རྒྱུན་སྤོང་བ། ཐུགས་ཉིད་ཀྱིས་བསྐྱོད་པའི་སྲོལ་ལ།

\* འཕྲུག་ཕྱོགས་ལ་ལྷན་པ་ལྟར་། ཐུགས་ཉིད་ཀྱིས་དེ་དང་ལྡན་པར། ཐུགས་ཉིད་དང་བསྐྱོན་ཏེ་མི་ཚོ་སྐྱེ་ལ་དགོས།

<sup>21</sup> འོན་ཀྱང་དམ་པའི་ཐུགས་ཉིད་ཀྱི་སྣེ་ལྟོན་དང་བསྐྱོན་ཏེ་མི་ཚོ་སྐྱེ་ལ་ཞིང་། ཐུགས་ཉིད་ཀྱིས་བྱེད་ཚུལ་ལྟོན་པར། ཐུགས་ཉིད་ཀྱིས་དེ་དང་ལྡན་པར། ཐུགས་ཉིད་དང་བསྐྱོན་ཏེ་མི་ཚོ་སྐྱེ་ལ་དགོས། <sup>22</sup> འོན་ཀྱང་དམ་པའི་ཐུགས་ཉིད་ཀྱི་སྣེ་ལྟོན་དང་བསྐྱོན་ཏེ་མི་ཚོ་སྐྱེ་ལ་ཞིང་། ཐུགས་ཉིད་ཀྱིས་བྱེད་ཚུལ་ལྟོན་པར། ཐུགས་ཉིད་དང་བསྐྱོན་ཏེ་མི་ཚོ་སྐྱེ་ལ་དགོས། <sup>23</sup> ཐུགས་ཉིད་ཀྱིས་བྱེད་ཚུལ་ལྟོན་པར། ཐུགས་ཉིད་དང་བསྐྱོན་ཏེ་མི་ཚོ་སྐྱེ་ལ་དགོས། <sup>24</sup> ཡང་སྐྱེ་བའི་མཉམ་པོ་ལྷུ་སྐྱེ་ལོ་གའི་ཁོངས་སུ་གཏོགས་པ་རྣམས་ གྱིས་འདོད་ཆགས་དང་ཐུན་པའི་སྣེ་ལ་ཕྱོགས་ཅན་རང་གཤམ་ལ་ཡང་ཚོད་ཏེ། ཐུགས་ཉིད་ཀྱིས་བྱེད་ཚུལ་ལྟོན་པར། ཐུགས་ཉིད་དང་བསྐྱོན་ཏེ་མི་ཚོ་སྐྱེ་ལ་དགོས། <sup>25</sup> དམ་པའི་ཐུགས་ཉིད་ཀྱིས་བྱེད་ཚུལ་ལྟོན་པར། ཐུགས་ཉིད་དང་བསྐྱོན་ཏེ་མི་ཚོ་སྐྱེ་ལ་དགོས། <sup>26</sup> ང་ཚོས་རང་བསྐྱོན་གྱིང་པའམ། གཞན་ལ་ལྷུག་རྒྱུན་སྤོང་བ། ཐུགས་ཉིད་ཀྱིས་བསྐྱོད་པའི་སྲོལ་ལ།

**Vocabulary Practice**

**Exercise 2:**

Use the vocabulary words provided to complete the following sentences taken from the text above (change the form as necessary). Try and do them from memory (without looking at the text).

faithful	sinful nature	to worship	war	sexual sins
jealousy	statues	patient	to delight	self control
impure acts	gentle	to march		to nail

1. The sinful nature does not want what the Spirit \_\_\_\_\_ in. The two are at \_\_\_\_\_ with each other.
2. What the \_\_\_\_\_ does is clear. It enjoys \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_ and wild living.
3. The sinful nature also \_\_\_\_\_ of gods and evil powers.
4. In addition, the sinful nature is full of \_\_\_\_\_ and fits of anger and is interested only in getting ahead.
5. The fruit the Holy Spirit produces is love, joy and peace. It is being \_\_\_\_\_, kind and good. It is being \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ having \_\_\_\_\_ of oneself.
6. Those who belong to Christ Jesus have \_\_\_\_\_ their sinful nature to his cross.
7. Since we live by the Spirit, let us \_\_\_\_\_ in step with the Spirit.

### Exercise 3:

Use the vocabulary words provided to complete the following sentences and practice every day usage of these words (change the form as necessary).

sinful nature      to delight      war      to worship      jealousy  
statues      patient      faithful      gentle      self control      to nail  
to march

1. When he was in the army, he had to get up and \_\_\_\_\_ in straight lines every morning with all the other soldiers.
2. Even though we have had difficult times, she has always been a \_\_\_\_\_ wife to me and will stay with me no matter what.
3. The food was good, the conversation was great. We \_\_\_\_\_ in the time with our friends last night.
4. When you do things you know you shouldn't be doing you are not listening to the Spirit but are following your \_\_\_\_\_.
5. That boy didn't have much \_\_\_\_\_, and even though he shouldn't have, he couldn't stop until he ate the whole cake by himself.
6. You can \_\_\_\_\_ God by telling him how great he is, singing to him and even by living your life to give him glory!
7. Some religions make \_\_\_\_\_ of stone, wood or precious metals to represent gods.
8. Many people are filled with \_\_\_\_\_ when their friends or family members have more success, money or recognition than themselves.
9. I hurt my thumb with the hammer when I was trying to \_\_\_\_\_ those two pieces of wood together.
10. If those two countries don't talk and come up with a solution, I'm afraid there may be a \_\_\_\_\_ and many people will die.
11. These days, people want everything NOW, and no one can be \_\_\_\_\_ to wait for what they want.
12. He was so \_\_\_\_\_ when he picked her up, wiped away her tears and softly prayed with her.

### Comprehension Questions

1. What gives you the power to NOT follow your sinful nature?
2. Describe the relationship between the Spirit and a person's sinful nature.
3. Following our sinful nature results in many behaviors that are harmful to us and others. The worst result is that those who follow their sinful nature will not receive (enter into) \_\_\_\_\_.
4. What nine things are listed as the fruit of the Holy Spirit?
5. What do those who follow Jesus do with their sinful nature?
6. If we live by the Spirit, what four things should we do?

### Deeper Understanding

1. Why do we have laws?
2. Who has a sinful nature?
3. The law mentioned in verse 18 is talking about the law that God gave to Moses. This is a set of rules that told the Jewish people what they should and shouldn't do. Why do you think the Spirit removes the law from over us? (the law is no longer the tool to control our behavior)
4. How do verses 19-21 help you see that humans are different than animals?
5. Why is worshiping statues and evil powers considered part of the sinful nature and therefore wrong?
6. Do you know of any laws against the things mentioned in verses 22-23? Why not?
7. What do you think it means to nail your sinful nature to the cross?
8. If the Spirit lives in us and our lives reflect the behaviors listed in verses 22-23, why should we not be proud?

### Beyond the Text

1. After the Spirit enters a person, do they still possess their sinful nature?
2. How does someone receive the Holy Spirit?
3. Jesus said that all the commandments of the law could be summed up in two statements: (1) Love God; (2) Love your neighbor. What is the relationship between these two commands and the ideas presented in verses 19-23.
4. After a person nails his/her sinful nature on the cross, will that person never again do things that are bad?
5. What do you think it means to live by the Spirit?

## Answers

### Exercise 1:

1. K 2. D 3. G 4. A 5. I 6. C 7. N 8. E 9. B  
10. H 11. F 12. M 13. J 14. L

### Exercise 2:

1. delights; war 2. sinful nature; sexual sins; impure acts  
3. worships; statues 4. jealousy  
5. patient; faithful; gentle; control 6. nailed 7. march

### Exercise 3:

1. march 2. faithful 3. delighted 4. sinful nature  
5. self control 6. worship 7. statues 8. jealousy 9. nail  
10. war 11. Patient 12. gentle

### Comprehension Questions:

1. The power of the Holy Spirit.
2. They are at war against each other.
3. Those who follow their sinful nature will not receive God's kingdom.
4. The fruit the Holy Spirit produces are (1) love, (2) joy, (3) peace, (4) patience, (5) kindness, (6) goodness, (7) faithfulness, (8) gentleness, and (9) control of oneself.
5. They should nail their sinful nature to the cross.
6. Those who live by the Spirit should (1) march in step with the Spirit, (2) not become proud, (3) not make each other angry, and (4) not want what belongs to others.

### Deeper Understanding:

1. Laws are an attempt to control people's behavior. Every law has an associated punishment. Those who write laws hope that the fear of punishment will cause people to obey the laws.
2. Every human being has a sinful nature. We are born with this. It is a desire to do whatever we want to do and not be controlled in any way.
3. The Spirit is God's presence with us. He has the ability to speak into our heart (desires) and mind (source of decision making). The Spirit helps us to WANT the things that are good and also helps us to see the danger of those behaviors

which are not good. It is similar to having a counselor (guide) with us at all times.

4. We aren't surprised when animals live wildly. We call them wild animals. We aren't surprised when animals fight and kill. We think it is natural that an animal will take things from others. We don't consider it strange that animals have sex freely without relationship. However, we expect that humans should be different. The Bible teaches that God made humans in His image. Humans are different than animals and therefore we expect their behavior to be different.
5. The Bible teaches that there is only ONE God. If everything that exists came from that one God, then we are dependent on that source. Worship is to honor what is greatest of all. If there is a creator who made everything, then there is only one thing that is greatest of all, the creator, which is God. Therefore, only God should be worshiped.
6. Most laws are made to prevent people from doing things that are harmful to others. The fruit of the Spirit brings good things to our self as well as those around us.
7. The way of the cross was a choice for Jesus. God asked Jesus to give up his life for all mankind. Dying on the cross was a decision that Jesus made. He chose to follow God's plan in how to live his life rather than his own plan. Nailing our sinful nature on the cross is choosing to follow God's plan for life rather than following our own desires and wishes. It is considering our sinful nature dead because of Jesus work on the cross.
8. Pride is the result of something we have accomplished on our own. It says, "Look what I have done! Isn't this great! I have a great ability." However, the fruit of the Spirit is not something we can produce through our own ability. If the Spirit is not present, then the fruit will not be present in our lives.

# Chapter 15

## Jesus Teaches About Prayer

### Pre-Reading

1. Do you pray? Who do you pray to?
2. How do you pray? Where do you pray?
3. What do you ask for?

### Vocabulary Definitions

#### Exercise 1:

In the parenthesis next to the following vocabulary words, write the letter of its corresponding definition. In addition, write the Tibetan translation of the vocabulary word in the space to the right. One has been done for you. Use a dictionary to look-up words you don't know.

- |                              |              |   |
|------------------------------|--------------|---|
| 1. certain ( )               | _____        | A. to look for something  |
| 2. honored ( )               | _____        | B. to give something to another person to use for a short time with the condition that it will be returned  |
| 3. to keep a person from ( ) | _____        | C. have a desire to do something that is wrong  |
| 4. tempted ( )               | _____        | D. to continue  |
| 5. to suppose ( )            | _____        | E. a small creature with a long narrow tail which can be used to sting with poison                          |
| 6. to lend ( )               | _____        | F. to not allow that person to become a part of something   |
| 7. loaves ( )                | _____        | G. in substitute or replacement for someone or something  |
| 8. to bother ( )             | _____        | H. to think what it would be like if the situation described were true                                      |
| 9. to keep on ( )            | _____        | I. have much respect for  |
| 10. to search ( )            | _____        | J. used before a noun to refer to a particular one of that person, place or thing but not specify which one |
| 11. instead ( )              | _____        | K. to cause another person trouble or problems  |
| 12. scorpion ( E )           | སྤྲུལ་ལྔ་ལྔ་ | L. a unit of measure used with bread; the whole mass of bread after it is baked (one loaf)                  |

### Text: Luke 11:1-13

<sup>1</sup> One day Jesus was praying in a certain place. When he finished, one of his disciples spoke to him. “Lord,” he said, “teach us to pray, just as John taught his disciples.”

<sup>2</sup> Jesus said to them, “When you pray, this is what you should say.

“ ‘Father,  
may your name be honored.  
May your kingdom come.

<sup>3</sup> Give us each day our daily bread.

<sup>4</sup> Forgive us our sins,  
as we also forgive everyone who sins against us.  
Keep us from falling into sin when we are tempted.’ “

<sup>5</sup> Then Jesus said to them, “Suppose someone has a friend. He goes to him at midnight. He says, ‘Friend, lend me three loaves of bread. <sup>6</sup> A friend of mine on a journey has come to stay with me. I have nothing for him to eat.’

<sup>7</sup> “Then the one inside answers, ‘Don’t bother me. The door is already locked. My children are with me in bed. I can’t get up and give you anything.’

<sup>8</sup> “I tell you, that person will not get up. And he won’t give the man bread just because he is his friend. But because the man keeps on asking, he will get up. He will give him as much as he needs.

<sup>9</sup> “So here is what I say to you. Ask, and it will be given to you. Search, and you will find. Knock, and the door will be opened to you. <sup>10</sup> Everyone who asks will receive. He who searches will find. And the door will be opened to the one who knocks.

<sup>11</sup> “Fathers, suppose your son asks for a fish. Which of you will give him a snake instead? <sup>12</sup> Or suppose he asks for an egg. Which of you will give him a scorpion?

<sup>13</sup> Even though you are evil, you know how to give good gifts to your children. How much more will your Father who is in heaven give the Holy Spirit to those who ask him!”

*New International Reader’s Version® (NIRV®, 1996)*

ལུ་གུ་ 11:1-13 路加福音 11:1-13

1 ཡེ་ལུ་ས་མེ་ཞིག་ལ་གསོལ་བ་བཏབ་པ་དང་། དེ་ཚེ་རྗེས་ཉེ་གནས་ཤིག་གིས་ཁོང་ལ་“གཙོ་བོ། ཡེ་ཉ་  
ནན་གྱིས་ཁོང་གི་ཉེ་གནས་རྣམས་ལ་སློན་ལམ་འདེབས་པར་བསྐྱབས་པ་ལྟར། ང་ཚོ་ལ་འདྲ་སློན་ལམ་འདེབས་  
པར་སློབས་དང་”ཞེས་སྒྲུབ་པ་ལ། 2 ཁོང་གིས་ཁོ་ཚོར་བྱེད་ཚོས་སློན་ལམ་འདེབས་སྐབས་འདི་ལྟར་བོད།\*

ཡབ་ལགས། བྱེད་མཚན་དམ་པར་རྩི་བར་ཤོག།  
བྱེད་ཀྱི་རྒྱལ་སྤིང་ལོང་བར་ཤོག།  
3 རེད་ཀྱི་ཉིན་རེའི་ཁ་ཟས་དེ།  
བྱེད་ཀྱིས་ང་ཚོར་གནང་བར་མཛོད།།  
4 རེད་ཀྱིས་གཞན་ཉེས་སེལ་བ་ལྟར།།  
རེད་ཀྱི་སྒྲིག་ཉེས་སེལ་བར་མཛོད།།  
ཉམས་ཚེད་ནང་དུ་འཇུག་མ་མཛོད།།

ཞེས་གསུངས།\*\*

5 ཁོང་གིས་དེ་ཚོར་“དཔེར་ན་བྱེད་ཚོའི་ནང་ནས་གཅིག་ལ་གོགས་པོ་ཡོད་ན། བཟ་བྱེད་ལ་ཁོའི་རྩེ་བྱིན་  
ནས་ཁོ་ལ་གོགས་པོ། བག་ལེབ་གསུམ་ང་ལ་གཡར་དང་། 6 གང་ལགས་ཟེར་ན། ཐག་རིང་ནས་  
ངའི་གོགས་པོ་ཞིག་སྐྱབས་པ་དང་། ཁོ་ལ་སྟེར་བའི་ཁ་ཟས་གང་ཡང་མེད་ཅེས་སྒྲུབ། 7 ལན་དུ་ནང་ལ་  
ཡོད་པའི་མི་དེས་ང་ལ་སུན་པོ་མ་བཟོས། རྒྱ་བརྒྱུ་ཚེ་ཉེ་བའི་སྤྱ་གུ་ང་དང་མཉམ་དུ་ཉལ་ཡོད་པས་བྱེད་ལ་  
གང་ཞིག་སྟེར་བའི་བྱིར་ཡར་ལང་མི་བྱུང་ཅེས་ཟེར་”ཞེས་གསུངས། 8 ཡེ་ལུ་“ངས་བྱེད་ཚོ་ལ་ཟེར་བྱུང་།  
ནང་ལ་ཡོད་པའི་མི་དེ་གོགས་པོ་ཡིན་པས་ལངས་ནས་མི་སྟེར་ན་ཡང་། བྱི་ལོགས་ཀྱི་མིས་ཡང་ཡང་ལུ་བའི་རྩེ་བྱིན་  
གྱིས་ཡར་ལངས་ནས་གང་ཅམ་དགོས་པ་ཁོ་ལ་སྟེར་ངེས་ཡིན། 9 དེའི་བྱིར་ངས་བྱེད་ཚོར་ཟེར་བྱུང་ལྟས་ཤིག་  
བྱེད་ལ་གནང་བར་འགྱུར། ཚོལ་ཞིག་རྟོན་པར་འགྱུར། རྒྱ་རྒྱུ་ཤིག་འབྱེད་པར་འགྱུར། 10 གང་ལགས་  
ཟེར་ན། ལུ་མཁན་ཐམས་ཅད་ལ་འཕོབ་པ་དང་། འཚོལ་མཁན་ཐམས་ཅད་ལ་རྟོན། རྒྱ་རྒྱུ་མཁན་ཐམས་  
ཅད་ལ་སློ་འབྱེད་པར་འགྱུར་བས་སོ། 11 དཔེར་ན་བྱེད་ཚོ་ལས་སུ་ཞིག་ལ་ཡིན་པ་དེས་སུ་ཉ་ག་དགོས་ཞེས་  
ལུ་ན་སྐྱུ་ལ་སྟེར་བར་བྱུངས།\*\*\* 12 ཡང་ན་སུ་ཡིས་སློང་དགོས་ཞེས་ལུ་ན་སྐྱུ་ལ་བྱ་ཉལ་ཅིག་སྟེར་ངམ།

\* ལུ་གུ་ཡིས་བྱིས་པའི་འཕྲིན་བཟང་གི་བུས་ཡིག་སྐྱེ་མའི་ནང་ནས་ཁ་གསལ་ལ་ཚོག་རྒྱུ་དང་དོར་ཞིང་ཁམས་སུ་བཞུགས་པའི་རེད་ཀྱི་ཡབ་ཅེས་བཞོད་པ་ཡིན་  
དང་། བུས་ཡིག་སྐྱེ་མ་གཞན་དག་ནང་ནས་ཚོག་རྒྱུ་དང་གཉིས་པོའི་རྗེས་སུ་བྱེད་ཀྱི་དགོངས་པ་ཞིང་ཁམས་སུ་འགྱུར་བ་ལྟར་ས་ལ་ཡང་འགྱུར་བར་བཞོག་ཅེས་  
བཞོད་པ་ཡིན།  
\*\* ལུ་གུ་ཡིས་བྱིས་པའི་འཕྲིན་བཟང་གི་བུས་ཡིག་སྐྱེ་མའི་ནང་ནས་ཁ་གསལ་ལ་ཚོག་རྒྱུ་དང་མཐའ་མའི་རྗེས་སུ་དང་པོ་ལས་རེད་ཐར་བར་མཛོད་ཅེས་བཞོད་པ་ཡིན།  
\*\*\* ལུ་གུ་ཡིས་བྱིས་པའི་འཕྲིན་བཟང་གི་བུས་ཡིག་སྐྱེ་མའི་ནང་ནས་གཉིས་ལ་བུས་བག་ལེབ་དགོས་ཞེས་ལུ་ན་སུ་ཉ་ག་དགོས་ཞེས་བཞོད་པ་ཡིན།

13 བྱེད་ཚོ་རན་པ་ཡིན་ཡང་བྱེད་ཀྱི་སྤྱ་གུ་རྣམས་ལ་ལག་ཏུ་གསལ་བཟང་པོ་སློད་པར་ཤེས་ན། བྱེད་ཀྱི་ཡབ་ཞིང་  
ཁམས་སུ་བཞུགས་པ་ཡིས་ཁོང་ལ་གསོལ་འདེབས་བྱེད་མཁན་རྣམས་ལ་དམ་པའི་སྤྱ་གུ་ཉིད་དེ་བས་ཀྱང་གནང་  
བར་འགྱུར་”ཞེས་གསུངས་སོ།།

Vocabulary Practice

Exercise 2:

Use the vocabulary words provided to complete the following sentences taken from the text above (change the form as necessary). Try and do them from memory (without looking at the text).

to keep on	to lend	to suppose	instead	scorpion
to keep us from	to bother	to search	certain	honored
tempted	loaves			

- One day Jesus was praying in a \_\_\_\_\_ place
- We should ask that the name of God, our Father, be \_\_\_\_\_ everywhere.
- We need God’s help to \_\_\_\_\_ sinning when we are \_\_\_\_\_.
- To help us understand prayer, Jesus said, “\_\_\_\_\_ you have a friend who comes to you at midnight.”
- In the story, your friend says, “Please \_\_\_\_\_ me three \_\_\_\_\_ of bread.”
- You reply, “Don’t \_\_\_\_\_ me! I’m already in bed!”
- Your friend \_\_\_\_\_ asking for the bread so you finally give it to him.
- Jesus encourages us to look for answers. He said, “If you \_\_\_\_\_ , then you will find.”
- Would you give your friend a snake \_\_\_\_\_ of a fish?
- If your friend asks for an egg would you give him a \_\_\_\_\_ ?

**Exercise 3:**

Practice every day usage of these words by using the vocabulary words in the box to complete the following sentences (change the form as necessary).

to keep on    to lend        to suppose    instead        scorpion  
 to keep us from        to bother    to search    certain        honored  
 tempted        loaves

1. They put many big rocks in the road to \_\_\_\_\_ using the broken bridge.
2. He felt \_\_\_\_\_ to sit at the same table with all the high leaders.
3. \_\_\_\_\_ you got lost in the mountains, what would you do?
4. They can't find one of their yaks and have been \_\_\_\_\_ all day for it.
5. You should \_\_\_\_\_ taking your medicine until it is finished.
6. I don't have time on Monday, can we meet on Tuesday \_\_\_\_\_ ?
7. With so many people, we will need three more \_\_\_\_\_ of bread.
8. She screamed when she saw the \_\_\_\_\_ crawling up her friend's back.
9. Could you \_\_\_\_\_ me some money to buy a bowl of noodles?
10. He was \_\_\_\_\_ to cheat on the exam but the teacher was watching carefully.
11. Please don't \_\_\_\_\_ me right now because I'm talking on the phone.
12. I was waiting for my friend in a \_\_\_\_\_ place when my mother called.

**Comprehension Questions**

1. What did the disciples ask Jesus to teach them?
2. What time does the man in the story visit his friend?
3. What two excuses does the man inside give for not helping his friend?
4. How much bread does the man in the story want?
5. How much bread does the man in the story get?

Use verses 9 and 10 to complete this table:

If you...	Then you will...
<i>Ask</i>	
	<i>Find</i>
<i>Knock</i>	

**Deeper Understanding**

1. What did John (the Baptist) teach his disciples?
2. What does "daily bread" mean?
3. What is God's "Kingdom"?
4. Perhaps verses 2-4 are not teaching us the exact words we should use, but instead they are categories of things we should ask God to do. Can you identify general categories of things we are encouraged to pray about?
5. Why would the man inside finally help the man who wanted bread?
6. What is the good gift that God wants us to ask, search and knock for?

**Beyond the Text**

1. Jesus taught people to pray to God as our "Father". He is the one who made everything (including us), the one who knows everything and can do anything. Yet we can pray to him as our father. How do you think the disciples would have felt about that? How does it make you feel to know you have a perfect father who loves you?
2. Is what you previously thought about prayer different from what Jesus teaches about prayer in this passage? How is it different?
3. Jesus prayed almost every chance he got (in the stories about Jesus, he is often praying). He would go up on mountains and pray for hours. He would get up early and pray. He would go alone into quiet places and pray. Not only did he tell his followers how to pray but he showed them by example. What does this teach us about the importance of prayer? How often do you pray?
4. Try and put verses 9 and 10 into your own words.
5. Jesus starts his prayer by praising and honoring God. He then asks for God to help him with the things he needs (his requests). Often when we pray we start with requests and forget to praise and worship God. How do you pray? What do you say to God? What do you ask God to do?

6. If the man inside finally helped the man who needed bread because he was bothered, how much more will a God who made you and loves you help you when you pray?
7. Why does God want to give us the gift of the Holy Spirit?
8. Jesus often used humor to teach. Did you find any part of the passage funny? Which part?

### Answers

#### Exercise 1:

1. J    2. I    3. F    4. C    5. H    6. B    7. L  
 8. K    9. D    10. A    11. G    12. E

#### Exercise 2:

1. certain    2. honored    3. (a) keep us from ; (b) tempted    4. suppose  
 5. (a) lend; (b) loaves    6. bother    7. keeps on    8. search    9. instead    10. scorpion

#### Exercise 3:

1. keep us from    2. honored    3. suppose    4. searching    5. keep on    6. instead  
 7. loaves    8. scorpion    9. lend    10. tempted    11. bother    12. certain

#### Comprehension Questions:

1. How to pray.
2. At midnight.
3. The door is locked and my children are in bed.
4. Three loaves.
5. Three loaves.

If you...	Then you will...
<i>Ask</i>	<i>Receive</i>
<i>Search</i>	<i>Find</i>
<i>Knock</i>	<i>The door will be opened</i>

#### Deeper Understanding:

1. How to pray.
2. The food we need, though it could possibly represent all our daily needs (food, clothing, shelter, etc).
3. Jesus is the King of everything and everyone. Those who accept this become a part of his Kingdom. They are under His authority and protection. Anyone can become a part of this Kingdom and it doesn't matter what country or ethnic group you come from. When Jesus comes back to the earth His Kingdom will be complete and it will last forever.
4. (a) Asking that the knowledge of God be known and received by everyone in the world.  
 (b) Asking that people of the world would learn to live according to God's plans.  
 (c) Asking God to provide us with the things we need for life (food, clothing, housing, etc.).  
 (d) Asking God to forgive us and also help us to forgive others.  
 (e) Asking God to help us do the right thing.
5. Because the man outside kept asking again and again. He was persistent. He did not give up.
6. The Father wants us to ask for the Holy Spirit. He will answer that prayer!



# Chapter 16

## Dealing with Worries

### Pre-Reading

1. What are the most basic things you need to live?
2. What things are you afraid of? Why?
3. How do you overcome your fears?
4. Do you know any proverbs/sayings about not fearing/not worrying?

### Vocabulary Definitions

#### Exercise 1:

In the parenthesis next to the following vocabulary words, write the letter of its corresponding definition. In addition, write the Tibetan translation of the vocabulary word in the space to the right. One has been done for you. Use a dictionary to look-up words you don't know.

- |                   |               |  |
|-------------------|---------------|--|
| 1. to worry ( )   | _____         | A. a space where things are kept to use later                    |
| 2. raven ( G )    | ཐོ་རྩམ། _____ | B. an insect like a butterfly but less colorful                  |
| 3. crop ( )       | _____         | C. a bag used to carry small things; often hung on ones shoulder |
| 4. storeroom ( )  | _____         | D. grass growing naturally, not planted                          |
| 5. lily ( )       | _____         | E. a rich king of Israel, the son of David, who lived long ago   |
| 6. Solomon ( )    | _____         | F. a white bell shaped flower                                    |
| 7. wild grass ( ) | _____         | G. a black bird, like a crow but bigger                          |
| 8. ungodly ( )    | _____         | H. the value or importance of something                          |
| 9. flock ( )      | _____         | I. not believing, following or obeying God                       |
| 10. purse ( )     | _____         | J. to have concern or fear about something or someone            |
| 11. moth ( )      | _____         | K. plants that are grown by farmers                              |
| 12. worth ( )     | _____         | L. a group of birds or animals such as sheep                     |

### Text: Luke 12:22-34

<sup>22</sup> Then Jesus spoke to his disciples. He said, "I tell you, do not worry. Don't worry about your life and what you will eat. And don't worry about your body and what you will wear. <sup>23</sup> There is more to life than eating. There are more important things for the body than clothes.

<sup>24</sup> "Think about the ravens. They don't plant or gather crops. They don't have any storerooms at all. But God feeds them. You are worth much more than birds!

<sup>25</sup> "Can you add even one hour to your life by worrying? <sup>26</sup> You can't do that very little thing. So why worry about the rest?

<sup>27</sup> "Think about how the lilies grow. They don't work or make clothing. But here is what I tell you. Not even Solomon in all of his glory was dressed like one of those flowers. <sup>28</sup> If that is how God dresses the wild grass, how much better will he dress you! After all, the grass is here only today. Tomorrow it is thrown into the fire. Your faith is so small!

<sup>29</sup> "Don't spend time thinking about what you will eat or drink. Don't worry about it. <sup>30</sup> People who are ungodly run after all of those things. Your Father knows that you need them.

<sup>31</sup> "But put God's kingdom first. Then those other things will also be given to you.

<sup>32</sup> "Little flock, do not be afraid. Your Father has been pleased to give you the kingdom. <sup>33</sup> Sell what you own. Give to those who are poor. Provide purses for yourselves that will not wear out. Put away riches in heaven that will not be used up. There, no thief can come near it. There, no moth can destroy it. <sup>34</sup> Your heart will be where your riches are.

*New International Reader's Version® (NIRV®, 1996)*

ལུ་གླུ་ 12:22-34 路加福音 12:22-34

22 ཡེ་ལུ་སྤྱི་ལོ་གི་ཉེ་གནས་རྣམས་ལ་“དེའི་ཕྱིར་ངས་ཁྱེད་རྣམས་ལ་ཟེར་རྒྱུར། མི་ཚེའི་ཕྱིར་ཟས་གང་  
 ཞིག་ཟ་རྒྱུ་དང་། ལུས་ཀྱི་ཕྱིར་གོས་གང་ཞིག་གྱོན་པ་སེམས་ཁྱེད་ལ་མ་གྲོས་ཤིག།” 23 གང་ལགས་ཟེར་ན།  
 མི་ཚེ་ནི་ལ་ཟས་དང་། ལུས་པོ་གྱོན་ཆས་དེ་གཉིས་ལས་ལྷག་པ་ཡོད་དོ། 24 མོ་རོག་ལ་ལྷོས་ཤིག དེ་  
 ཚོས་ས་བོན་མི་འདེབས་ལ། ལོ་ཉོག་ཡང་མི་རྒྱ། དེ་ཚོར་མཛོད་ཁང་ངས་བང་མཛོད་མེད་ཀྱང་། དགོན་  
 མཚོག་གིས་དེ་ཚོར་ལ་ཟས་གནང་། ཁྱེད་ཚོ་བྱ་རྣམས་ལས་ཇི་ཅམ་གྱི་གལ་ཆེའོ། 25 ཁྱེད་ཚོ་ལས་སུ་ཞིག་  
 གིས་སེམས་ཁྱེད་ཀྱི་བའི་ངང་ནས་མི་ཚོ་འདི་ལ་རྒྱ་ཚོད་གཅིག་ཅམ་གྱི་རིང་དུ་གཏོང་བྱེད་པམ། 26 དེ་ལྟར་  
 དོན་རྒྱུང་འདི་ཡང་བྱེད་མི་བྱེད་ན། དོན་གཞན་ལ་ཅིའི་ཕྱིར་སེམས་ཁྱེད་ཀྱི་བྱེད། 27 ལྷག་གཟིག་མེ་ཉོག་ཇི་  
 ལྟར་སྐྱེ་བར་ལྷོས་ཤིག དེ་ཚོས་ལས་ཀ་མི་བྱེད་ཅིང་བལ་ཡང་མི་ལམ་ལ། ངས་ཁྱེད་ཚོ་ལ་ཟེར་རྒྱུར། རྒྱལ་  
 པོ་སྤྱི་ལོ་མོན་གཟི་བརླིང་དང་ལྷན་པ་ཡིན་ཡང་། ཁོང་གི་རྒྱན་གོས་དེ་ཚོ་ལས་གཅིག་ལའང་འགྲན་མི་བྱེད།  
 28 གལ་ཏེ་དགོན་མཚོག་གིས་ཞིང་གི་རྩ་དེ་རིང་སྐྱེ་སྤྱོད་ཉེན་ཐབ་ལ་འཕེན་རྒྱ་ཡིན་པ་དེ་ལྟར་གཞོག་པར་མཛོད་  
 བ། ཁོང་གིས་དེ་བས་ཀྱང་ཁྱེད་དང་རྒྱུང་བ་རྣམས་ལ་གཞོག་པ་གནང་བར་བྱེད་པམ། 29 ཅི་ཟ་དང་ཅི་འཕྲུང་  
 མ་འཚོལ་ཞིང་སེམས་ཁྱེད་ལ་མ་གྲོས། 30 རྒྱ་མཚན་ནི་ཕྱི་པ་རྣམས་ཀྱིས་དེ་ཚོ་ཚང་མ་འཚོལ། ཁྱེད་ཀྱི་ཡབ་  
 ཀྱིས་ཁྱེད་ཚོ་ལ་དེ་རྣམས་དགོས་པ་མཁྱེན། 31 ཁོང་གི་རྒྱལ་སྤྱི་ལ་འབད་བརྩོན་བྱས་ན་དངོས་པོ་དེ་རྣམས་  
 ཁྱེད་ཚོ་ལ་གནང་བར་འགྱུར། 32 གྱེ། ལྷ་རྒྱུང་དང་འདྲ་བ་རྣམས། མ་འཇིགས་ཤིག གང་ཡིན་ཞེ་ན།  
 རྒྱལ་སྤྱི་ལ་ཁྱེད་རྣམས་ལ་གནང་བ་དེ་ཁྱེད་ཀྱི་ཡབ་ལ་བྱུགས་མཉེས་སོ། 33 མོ་སེའི་དངོས་པོ་བརྩོན་པ་ནས་དབུ་  
 སོངས་ལ་སྐྱེན་པ་བྱོང་། བསྐྱེད་པ་མི་འཕེབས་པའི་དུས་ལ་ལྷག་དང་། རྒྱན་མ་མི་ཡོང་བ་དང་ལྷག་པས་  
 མི་འཇིག་པའི་ཞིང་ཁམས་སུ་ཡོད་པའི་རྒྱ་ཚོར་རྒྱན་དུ་གནས་པ་ཞིག་འཕྱོང་བར་གྱིས་ཤིག། 34 གང་ཡིན་ཞེ་ན།  
 ཁྱེད་ཀྱི་རྒྱ་ཚོར་གང་དུ་ཡོད་པ་དེར་ཁྱེད་ཀྱི་སེམས་ཀྱང་ཡོད་པར་འགྱུར་”ཞེས་གསུངས་སོ།།

Vocabulary Practice

Exercise 2:

Use the vocabulary words provided to complete the following sentences taken from the text above (change the form as necessary). Try and do them from memory (without looking at the text).

lily	purse	ungodly	crop	flock	moth
worth	storeroom	Solomon	wild grass	raven	to worry

1. Jesus said to think about the \_\_\_\_\_ who don't plant or gather \_\_\_\_\_.
2. Those birds don't have any \_\_\_\_\_ at all but God feeds them.
3. Jesus told the people that they are \_\_\_\_\_ much more than birds.
4. He asked them, "Can you add even one hour to your life by \_\_\_\_\_?"
5. Next Jesus had them think about how the \_\_\_\_\_ grow and how they don't work or make clothing.
6. He compared the flowers to \_\_\_\_\_ (a great King of Israel), who in all his glory was not dressed like one of those lilies.
7. Jesus reminded them that if God dressed the \_\_\_\_\_ with such beauty, he will certainly dress you much better.
8. People who are \_\_\_\_\_ spend too much of their time thinking about what they will eat or drink.
9. Jesus said "Little \_\_\_\_\_, do not be afraid. Your Father has been pleased to give you the kingdom."
10. He told them to give to those who are poor and provide \_\_\_\_\_ for themselves that would not wear out.
11. Put away riches in heaven where no thief can come near it and no \_\_\_\_\_ can destroy it.

### Exercise 3:

Practice every day usage of these words by using the vocabulary words in the box to complete the following sentences (change the form as necessary).

raven	crop	storeroom	lily	ungodly	flock
purse	moth	worth	Solomon	wild grass	to worry

1. I stored my warm winter coat in a box for the summer but when I got it out the \_\_\_\_\_ had eaten big holes in it.
2. In spring you can see many flowers like \_\_\_\_\_ growing in the fields.
3. After the earthquake I called my family and told them not to \_\_\_\_\_ because I was OK.
4. There are some big black \_\_\_\_\_ sitting in the field over there. I wonder what they are eating.
5. The jewelry in that woman's hair is very beautiful and seems like it is \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of money.
6. King \_\_\_\_\_ was King David's son and was said to be the wisest king ever.
7. What kind of \_\_\_\_\_ do farmers grow in Tibet?
8. There are 10 yaks happily eating the \_\_\_\_\_ on that mountain.
9. Those stores sell designer \_\_\_\_\_ which are just like regular ones but more expensive.
10. \_\_\_\_\_ people aren't interested in talking about religion or worship or prayer.
11. There weren't any more bags of salt on the shelves but the worker said he would go back to the \_\_\_\_\_ and get some more for me to buy.
12. Even during the rain and snow the shepherd had to take care of his \_\_\_\_\_ of sheep and goats.

### Comprehension Questions

1. Who feeds the ravens?
2. What is dressed with glory even greater than Solomon? Who dressed this?
3. What should you not spend time thinking or worrying about?
4. What did Jesus say we should put first (make most important)?

5. Who should we give (money) to?
6. Where should we put our riches?
7. What two things can NOT harm any riches placed in heaven?
8. Where will our heart be (meaning what things will we desire)?

### Deeper Understanding

1. Is there a difference between "worrying" and "being responsible"?
2. What control do you have over the "length" of your life?
3. What is the connection between "putting God's kingdom first" and receiving the things that we need (food and drink)?
4. What does Jesus mean by the statement, "Your Father has been pleased to give you the kingdom"?

### Beyond the Text

1. Why should we not worry about food and clothing?
2. What is more important than food and clothing?
3. Why does Jesus say that their faith is small?
4. How does a person "put God's kingdom first"?
5. How does a person provide a purse for himself/herself that does not wear out?
6. Do you think a person's heart follows their riches? Explain.

### Answers

#### Exercise 1:

1. J   2. G   3. K   4. A   5. F   6. E   7. D   8. I   9. L   10. C  
11. B   12. H

#### Exercise 2:

- |                  |                |               |             |
|------------------|----------------|---------------|-------------|
| 1. ravens; crops | 2. store rooms | 3. worth      | 4. worrying |
| 5. lilies        | 6. Solomon     | 7. wild grass | 8. ungodly  |
| 9. flock         | 10. purses     | 11. moth      |             |

**Exercise 3:**

- 1. moths      2. lilies      3. worry      4. ravens      5. worth
- 6. Solomon    7. crops      8. wild grass    9. purses      10. ungodly
- 11. storeroom    12. flock

**Comprehension Questions:**

1. God feeds the ravens.
2. Lilies are dressed with glory even greater than Solomon. God dresses them.
3. Don't spend time thinking or worrying about what to eat or drink.
4. We should put God's kingdom first in our lives.
5. We should give to the poor.
6. We should put our riches in heaven.
7. Neither thieves nor moths can harm any riches placed in heaven.
8. Our heart will be wherever we place our riches.

**Deeper Understanding:**

1. Worrying takes place in a person's heart. Being responsible results in action. We should take responsibility resulting in action that can provide food and clothing, but we should not worry, which only affects our minds and bodies and produces no results.
2. We can do things that might help to extend our lives if nothing bad happens. However, we have no power to prevent bad things from happening to us. We have no way to guarantee that we WILL take another breath in the next moment and continue living.
3. To put God's kingdom first is to recognize that He exists and is more important than anything else in the world. If God is our creator, then we depend on Him for everything. When we look to our creator for our daily needs, He is pleased, and happily gives us all that we need.
4. Jesus was speaking to those who were following him (his flock). God is pleased to open the door into His kingdom for anyone who responds to Jesus' message and chooses to follow Him.

# Chapter 17

## Looking into the Future

---

*Pre-Reading*

1. Do you know what will happen tomorrow? Next year? Ten years from now?
2. Is there any way to know the future?
3. Do you think the world will end some day? If so, how?

*Vocabulary Definitions*

**Exercise 1:**

In the parenthesis next to the following vocabulary words, write the letter of its corresponding definition. In addition, write the Tibetan translation of the vocabulary word in the space to the right. One has been done for you. Use a dictionary to look-up words you don't know.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. to decorate ( ) _____</li> <li>2. to keep watch ( ) _____</li> <li>3. to claim ( ) _____</li> <li>4. to make up your mind ( ) _____</li> <li>5. ahead of time ( ) _____</li> <li>6. to stand up for ( ) _____</li> <li>7. to withstand &amp; oppose ( ) _____</li> <li>8. to hand over ( ) _____</li> <li>9. authorities ( ) _____</li> <li>10. to stand firm ( ) _____</li> <li>11. a time is coming ( ) _____</li> <li>12. to surround ( ) _____</li> <li>13. to destroy ( ) _____</li> <li>14. to escape ( E ) <span style="color: #E69A00; font-size: 1.2em;">འཕྲོགས་</span> _____</li> <li>15. to come true ( ) _____</li> <li>16. suffering ( ) _____</li> <li>17. overrun ( ) _____</li> </ol> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>A. to decide</li> <li>B. to go against or resist</li> <li>C. be strong in your thinking or ideas; don't change</li> <li>D. to say as if it were a fact/true</li> <li>E. to get away from something dangerous so that it you are safe</li> <li>F. to make something more beautiful by adding things to an object, room, building, etc.</li> <li>G. to give a thing or person to another</li> <li>H. to occur/happen as you thought it would</li> <li>I. in the future . . .</li> <li>J. to defend or support</li> <li>K. to go completely around something; enclose</li> <li>L. when people, animals or plant move into every place of a given area</li> <li>M. pain (physical or emotional)</li> <li>N. leaders</li> <li>O. to watch carefully for any kind of danger</li> <li>P. before the time of the event being discussed</li> <li>Q. to damage something so that it can no longer be used</li> </ol> |
|---|---|

Text: Luke 21:5-24

<sup>5</sup> Some of Jesus' disciples were talking about the temple. They spoke about how it was decorated with beautiful stones and with gifts that honored God. But Jesus asked, <sup>6</sup> "Do you see all this? The time will come when not one stone will be left on top of another. Every stone will be thrown down."

<sup>7</sup> "Teacher," they asked, "when will these things happen? And what will be the sign that they are about to take place?"

<sup>8</sup> Jesus replied, "Keep watch! Be careful that you are not fooled. Many will come in my name. They will claim, 'I am he!' And they will say, 'The time is near!' Do not follow them. <sup>9</sup> Do not be afraid when you hear about wars and about fighting against rulers. Those things must happen first. But the end will not come right away."

<sup>10</sup> Then Jesus said to them, "Nation will fight against nation. Kingdom will fight against kingdom. <sup>11</sup> In many places there will be powerful earthquakes. People will go hungry. There will be terrible sicknesses. Things will happen that will make people afraid. There will be great and miraculous signs from heaven.

<sup>12</sup> "But before all this, people will arrest you and treat you badly. They will hand you over to synagogues and prisons. You will be brought to kings and governors. All this will happen to you because of my name. <sup>13</sup> In that way you will be witnesses to them. <sup>14</sup> But make up your mind not to worry ahead of time about how to stand up for yourselves. <sup>15</sup> I will give you words of wisdom. None of your enemies will be able to withstand them or oppose them.

<sup>16</sup> "Even your parents, brothers, sisters, relatives and friends will hand you over to the authorities. They will put some of you to death. <sup>17</sup> Everyone will hate you because of me. <sup>18</sup> But not a hair on your head will be harmed. <sup>19</sup> If you stand firm, you will gain life.

<sup>20</sup> "A time is coming when you will see armies surround Jerusalem. Then you will know that it will soon be destroyed. <sup>21</sup> Those who are in Judea should then escape to the mountains. Those in the city should get out. Those in the country should not enter the city. <sup>22</sup> This is the time when God will punish Jerusalem. Everything will come true, just as it has been written.

<sup>23</sup> "How awful it will be in those days for pregnant women! How awful for nursing mothers! There will be terrible suffering in the land. There will be great anger against those people. <sup>24</sup> Some will be killed by the sword. Others will be taken as prisoners to all the nations. Jerusalem will be overrun by those who aren't Jews until the times of the non Jews come to an end.

New International Reader's Version® (NIRV®, 1996)

ལུ་ཀློང་ 21:5-24 路加福音 21:5-24

<sup>5</sup> དེ་ནས་མི་ལ་ལས་མཚོན་ཁང་ཆེན་མོ་ནི་ཅི་ལྟ་བུ་ལྷི་རྩོད་མཛེས་པ་དང་དཀོན་མཚོག་ལ་སྤུལ་བའི་མཚོན་པ་རྣམས་ གྱིས་རྒྱན་པའི་གཏམ་བཤད་དུས་ཁོང་གིས། <sup>6</sup> “ཁྱེད་ཚོས་མཐོང་བའི་ཁང་ཆེན་མོ་འདི་ནི་། མ་ འོངས་པའི་དུས་སྔ་དོན་པ་བོད་གཅིག་གི་སྟེང་དུ་དོན་གཅིག་གྲང་མི་ལུས་པར་བམས་ཅད་གཞིག་པར་འགྱུར་རོ།” ཞེས་གསུངས། <sup>7</sup> དེ་ཚོས་ཁོང་ལ་“སྟོན་པ་ལགས། དོན་འདི་རྣམས་དུས་ནས་ཞིག་ལ་འབྱུང་ཞིང་། དོན་འདི་ཚོ་འགྲུབ་པའི་ཚེ་ཉུགས་གང་འཕོན་ཡོང་”ཞེས་ཞུས་པ་ན། <sup>8</sup> ཁོང་གིས་“མི་སྤྲུལ་གྲང་ཁྱེད་ཚོ་མི་ སྤྲུལ་བའི་ཕྱིར་དོགས་ཐོན་བྱོས་ཤིག གང་ཡིན་ཞེ་ན། མི་མང་པོས་ངའི་མིང་ཐོག་ནས་ཡོང་སྟེ། ང་རང་ ཡིན་ཟེར་ཞིང་། ད་དུས་ལ་བབས་འདུག་ཅེས་ཟེར། ཁོ་ཚོའི་རྗེས་སུ་མ་འབྱོངས། <sup>9</sup> ཁྱེད་ཚོས་ དམག་འབྲུག་དང་། ཟིང་འབྲུག་སྐོར་གྱི་གཏམ་ཐོས་པའི་སྐབས་སུ་མ་འཛིགས་ཤིག དོན་འདི་ཚོ་འབྱུང་ དེས་གྲང་དེ་ནི་དུས་རབས་གྱི་མཐའ་མ་དུང་མ་ཡིན་”ཞེས་གསུངས། <sup>10</sup> དེ་ནས་ཁོང་གིས་ཁོ་ཚོར་“མི་ རིགས་དང་མི་རིགས་འབྲུག་ཅིང་། རྒྱལ་ཁབས་དང་རྒྱལ་ཁབས་འབྲུག་ཡོང་། <sup>11</sup> ས་གཡོམ་ཆེན་པོ་ དང་། ས་ཆ་མི་གཅིག་པར་ནད་ཡམས་དང་སྤྱི་ཡང་འབྱུང་བར་འགྱུར། བས་མཁའ་ནས་འཛིགས་ རྒྱག་སྐོར་བའི་སྤྲུལ་འབྱུང་ཡོང་། <sup>12</sup> དོན་དེ་ཚོ་བམས་ཅད་མ་འབྱུང་བའི་སྟོན་དུ་དེ་ཚོས་ཁྱེད་རྣམས་བཟུང་ བས་གཞོད་འཚོ་བྱེད་པ་དང་། ཡུ་རུ་བའི་འདུ་ཁང་དང་བཙོན་ཁང་ལ་གཏད་ཅིང་། ངའི་མིང་གི་ དོན་དུ་ས་གནས་དཔོན་པོ་དང་རྒྱལ་པོ་རྣམས་ཀྱི་མདུན་དུ་འབྲིད་ཡོང་། <sup>13</sup> དེས་ན་ཁྱེད་རྣམས་ལ་དཔང་ པོ་བྱེད་པའི་གོ་སྐབས་འབྱུང་ཡོང་། <sup>14</sup> དེའི་ཕྱིར་ཁྱེད་ཚོས་ལན་རི་ལྟར་འདེབས་པ་སྟོན་ལ་གྲ་སྒྲིག་མ་ བྱེད་པར་བཤག་གཅོད་བྱོས་ཤིག <sup>15</sup> རྒྱ་མཚོན་ནི་ངས་ཁྱེད་རྣམས་ལ་ཤེས་རབ་དང་ལྷན་པའི་གཏམ་སྟོན་པར་ བྱ། ཁྱེད་ཀྱི་ཁ་གཏད་རྣམས་ཀྱི་ནང་ནས་སྤྲུལ་ཞིག་གིས་དེ་ལ་ཁས་མི་ལེན་པའམ་དགག་པ་རྒྱག་པར་མི་བྱུབ། <sup>16</sup> བ་མ་དང་། སྤྲུལ། སྒོགས་པོ་སོགས་ཀྱིས་གྲང་ཁྱེད་ཚོར་རྒྱབ་གཏོད་བྱེད་ལ། ཁ་གཏད་རྣམས་ ཀྱིས་ཁྱེད་ཚོ་ལས་ཁ་ཤས་གསོད་པར་འགྱུར། <sup>17</sup> ཡང་ངའི་མིང་གི་དོན་དུ་མི་བམས་ཅད་ཀྱིས་ཁྱེད་ཚོ་ལ་ ལྲང་བར་བྱ། <sup>18</sup> འོན་ཀྱང་ཁྱེད་ཀྱི་མགོའི་སྐྱ་རྒྱ་གཅིག་གྲང་འཛིག་པར་མི་འགྱུར། <sup>19</sup> བཟོད་པ་ སྐོམ་པའི་སྐོར་ནས་ཁྱེད་ཚོའི་སྐྱོག་སྐྱོབ་དེས་ཡིན་ནོ། <sup>20</sup> ཁྱེད་རྣམས་ཀྱིས་ཡེ་རུ་ཤ་ལེམ་གྱི་སྒོགས་བཞེ་ལ་ དམག་དཔུང་གིས་སྐོར་བ་མཐོང་སྐབས། སྲོང་ཁྱེད་དེ་གཏོར་བའི་དུས་ལ་སྤྲེབས་ཉེ་བ་ཤེས་པར་གྱིས་ཤིག <sup>21</sup> དེའི་སྐབས་སུ་ཡུ་རུ་ཡུལ་དུ་ཡོད་པའི་མི་རྣམས་རི་ལ་འབྲོས་དགོས། སྲོང་ཁྱེད་ལ་ཡོད་པ་རྣམས་སྤྱིར་བཏོན་ ཅིང་། སྲོང་གསེབ་ཀྱི་མི་རྣམས་སྲོང་ཁྱེད་ནང་དུ་མ་འབྲོལ་ཞིག <sup>22</sup> གང་ལགས་ཟེར་ན། གསུང་རབ་ལ་གང་ དྲིས་པ་བམས་ཅད་འགྲུབ་སྟེ་དུས་དེ་ནི་ཆད་པ་གཅོད་པའི་ཉིན་མོ་ཡིན། <sup>23</sup> ཉིན་དེ་ཚོའི་རིང་ལ་འབྱུང་མེད་སྤུ་ གྲུ་འཁོར་བ་དང་སྤུ་སྤྲུག་ལ་འོ་མ་སྟེར་མ་ཁན་རྣམས་ལ་སྟེང་རེ་རྗེ། ཡུལ་ལ་སྤྲུག་བསྐྱེད་ཆེན་པོ་འབྱུང་བ་དང་། སྤྲུག་ཉེས་བྱས་པའི་སྐྱོན་གྱིས་མི་རིགས་འདི་ལ་དཀོན་མཚོག་གི་བྱུགས་ཁྲོ་འབབ་པར་འགྱུར། <sup>24</sup> ཁ་ཤས་རལ་ གྱིའི་ཁ་ཡིས་གསད་པ་དང་། ཁ་ཤས་བཙོན་པར་འགྱུར་ནས་མི་རིགས་བམས་ཅད་ཁྲོད་དུ་འབྲིད། ཕྱི་པའི་མི་ རིགས་ཀྱི་དུས་མ་ཚའ་བའི་བར་དུ་ཡེ་རུ་ཤ་ལེམ་གྱི་པའི་རྒྱང་ལོག་ཏུ་རྗེ་བར་འགྱུར།

## Vocabulary Practice

### Exercise 2:

Use the vocabulary words provided to complete the following sentences taken from the text above (change the form as necessary). Try and do them from memory (without looking at the text).

authorities	to make up your mind	to decorate	to stand firm
overrun	suffering	to claim	ahead of time
to keep watch	to destroy	to hand over	to escape
to surround	a time is coming	to come true	

- The disciples said the temple was \_\_\_\_\_ with beautiful stones.
- Jesus said, “\_\_\_\_\_!” He didn’t want his disciples to be fooled.
- In the future, many will \_\_\_\_\_ to be Jesus. They will say, “I am he!”
- But we should \_\_\_\_\_ not to worry \_\_\_\_\_.
- We don’t need to \_\_\_\_\_ ourselves, because God will give us wisdom.
- None of our enemies will be able to \_\_\_\_\_ us or oppose our words of wisdom.
- Even parents, brothers, sisters, relatives and friends will \_\_\_\_\_ the followers of Jesus to the \_\_\_\_\_.
- If you \_\_\_\_\_, you will gain life.
- “\_\_\_\_\_ when you will see armies \_\_\_\_\_ Jerusalem.”
- The city of Jerusalem was \_\_\_\_\_ by the Romans in about 70AD, just as Jesus said that it would be.
- When the armies destroyed Jerusalem, the people of Judea \_\_\_\_\_ to the mountains.
- We know that everything Jesus said will \_\_\_\_\_.
- There has been much \_\_\_\_\_ in the land of the Jews and it continues today.
- Jerusalem has been \_\_\_\_\_ by those who aren’t Jews. This will continue until the times of the non Jews come to an end.

### Exercise 3:

Practice every day usage of these words by using the vocabulary words in the box to complete the following sentences (change the form as necessary).

authorities	to make up your mind	to decorate	to stand firm
overrun	to claim	ahead of time	to keep watch
to destroy	a time is coming	to escape	to withstand
to surround	to come true		

- She couldn’t \_\_\_\_\_ the pressure of the college entrance exam.
- Did you \_\_\_\_\_ whether you will go home for Losar?
- We must be careful not to \_\_\_\_\_ our environment with pollution.
- We will arrive several hours \_\_\_\_\_ so we don’t miss the plane.
- The thief told me to \_\_\_\_\_ all my money.
- What is the cause of \_\_\_\_\_ in this world and how can we change it?
- Lhasa is \_\_\_\_\_ by mountains.
- The \_\_\_\_\_ told us we could not travel without a tour guide.
- His friends \_\_\_\_\_ him when no one else believed him.
- I talked to a man this morning. He \_\_\_\_\_ to be your father. But you told me your father was dead.
- They wanted to \_\_\_\_\_ the room for his birthday.
- We need to \_\_\_\_\_ though no one agrees with us.
- Can you \_\_\_\_\_ and not let anyone enter my office?
- I hope that all your dreams will \_\_\_\_\_.
- The old building was \_\_\_\_\_ with rats.
- Five men \_\_\_\_\_ from prison last night.
- Probably, \_\_\_\_\_ when everyone in the world will have a cell phone.

## Comprehension Questions

1. What were the disciples saying about the Temple in Jerusalem?
2. What did Jesus say would happen to the Temple?
3. What sign did the disciples want to know?
4. What did Jesus say the disciples shouldn't do when they heard about wars and fighting against rulers?
5. When we see wars and people claiming to be Jesus, what does that tell us?
6. List some of the bad things that Jesus said would happen.
7. List some of the good things that Jesus said would happen.

## Deeper Understanding

1. Why did the world not come to an end after the destruction of the temple and Jerusalem being overrun by non Jews in 70AD?
2. Jesus said many will come in his name and claim "I am he." Who? They will say "the time is near." What time?
3. What two ways did Jesus promise the disciples that God would help them during hard times.
4. This passage (and the next one) shows that Jesus was a prophet. He correctly prophesied about the destruction of the Temple (and Jerusalem) and it happened 40 years later. What can we learn from this? What does it teach us about other things he promises will happen?
5. In verse 24 Jesus said, "Jerusalem will be overrun by those who aren't Jews until the times of the non Jews come to an end." Has this happened?

## Beyond the Text

1. Jesus promised his followers that when they faced difficult times (even death) he would help them. How does this make you feel?
2. What Jesus told the disciples shows that God is in control of history. How does this help Christians remain strong in their faith during hard times?
3. Verses 12-15 talk about the disciples being Jesus' "witnesses." What does this mean? What were they witnesses to? Who were they a witness to? What things about Jesus could you share with others and who could you witness to?

4. How has Jesus given "words of wisdom" to his followers over the past 2000 years so they could "stand up for themselves" in synagogues, prisons and in front of kings and governors? Think about what you learned in chapters 11-13.
5. People often think countries or governments or empires will last forever. Sometimes the things they have built look very powerful and impressive. The disciples were looking at a huge temple (some of the stones of the temple were over 20 meters long)! They felt national pride. Jesus' comments surprised them greatly. Jesus predicted the center of their national identity and their most important place of worship would be turned into a pile of rocks. Israel's judgment was coming. What thing will not last forever? What WILL last forever? How do you feel about that?

## Answers

### Exercise 1:

1. F 2. O 3. D 4. A 5. P 6. J 7. B 8. G  
9. N 10. C 11. I 12. K 13. Q 14. E 15. H 16. M 17. L

### Exercise 2:

1. decorated 2. keep watch 3. claim 4. make up our mind; ahead of time  
5. stand up for 6. withstand 7. hand over; authorities  
8. stand firm 9. a time is coming; surround  
10. destroyed 11. escaped 12. come true 13. suffering 14. overrun

### Exercise 3:

1. withstand 2. make up your mind 3. destroy 4. ahead of time  
5. hand over 6. suffering 7. surrounded 8. authorities  
9. stood up for 10. claimed 11. decorate 12. stand firm  
13. keep watch 14. come true 15. overrun 16. escaped  
17. a time is coming

### Comprehension Questions:

1. How it was beautiful (decorated with beautiful stones and honoring God).
2. It would be destroyed (every stone would be thrown down).
3. When the temple (and Jerusalem) would be destroyed.
4. Be afraid.
5. We only know that these things must happen, and, that the end will not come right away after Jesus left the earth.
6. Destruction of the temple, wars and fighting, earthquakes, hunger, sickness, fear, Jesus' followers treated badly, armies surrounding Jerusalem.
7. Miraculous signs from heaven, opportunities to witness about Jesus, He would give his followers words of wisdom and their enemies would not be able to withstand or oppose them, not a hair on their heads would be harmed, they would gain life.

### Deeper Understanding:

1. Because Jesus was talking about two different things, the end of the temple/ Jerusalem 40 years later (in 70AD) and the end of the world. Often prophecies can refer to two events. Probably the end of Jerusalem would have felt like the end of the world for the Jews.
2. Many false teachers will say they are Jesus. They will say the time for the end of the world has come.
3. Give them words of wisdom. He also said that even though some die, if they stand firm, they will gain life.
4. If everything Jesus prophesied about has come true so far, then we can be sure whatever else he prophesied about will come true sometime. We can also learn that he is totally truthful. We know he will come back someday because he said he would.
5. The Roman army destroyed Jerusalem in 70 A.D. At that time, the Jews were scattered. They never returned as a nation until after World War II. This happened exactly as Jesus said it would.

## Chapter 18

### More Insight into the Future

#### Pre-Reading

1. What are some good surprises? What are some bad surprises?
2. Can you think of a surprise that would be good for some people and bad for some people?
3. Is there any way to know if it's going to rain soon? If so, how?
4. Do you think the earth will come to an end some day? If so, how might that happen?

#### Vocabulary Definitions

##### Exercise 1:

In the parenthesis next to the following vocabulary words, write the letter of its corresponding definition. In addition, write the Tibetan translation of the vocabulary word in the space to the right of the definition. One has been done for you. Use a dictionary to look-up words you don't know.

- |                        |             |  |
|------------------------|-------------|--|
| 1. miraculous ( )      | _____       | A. awful; shocking; upsetting; very bad                          |
| 2. puzzled ( )         | _____       | B. loud sound of wind, storms or some animals                    |
| 3. roar ( )            | _____       | C. burdened by; slowed down by something heavy                   |
| 4. tossing ( )         | _____       | D. very amazing; wonderful; caused by God's power                |
| 5. to faint ( M )      | བྱ་བ་འཕྲོར་ | E. to cease to exist; to die; to become nothing                  |
| 6. fig tree ( )        | _____       | F. the act of being splashed and thrown about; big waves do this |
| 7. pass away ( )       | _____       | G. something used to capture someone or something                |
| 8. loaded down ( )     | _____       | H. confused or perplexed; not understanding                      |
| 9. wasteful living ( ) | _____       | I. responsible for doing something wrong or evil                 |
| 10. drunkenness ( )    | _____       | J. to get away or get free from something                        |
| 11. trap ( )           | _____       | K. a fruit tree common in the Middle East                        |
| 12. terrible ( )       | _____       | L. condition caused by drinking too much alcohol                 |
| 13. guilty ( )         | _____       | M. to become unconscious   |
| 14. escape ( )         | _____       | N. meaningless and pointless existence                           |



**Text: Luke 21:25-38**

<sup>25</sup> “There will be miraculous signs in the sun, moon and stars. The nations of the earth will be in terrible pain. They will be puzzled by the roaring and tossing of the sea. <sup>26</sup> Terror will make people faint. They will be worried about what is happening in the world. The sun, moon and stars will be shaken from their places.

<sup>27</sup> “At that time people will see the Son of Man coming in a cloud. He will come with power and great glory. <sup>28</sup> When these things begin to take place, stand up. Hold your head up with joy and hope. The time when you will be set free will be very close.”

<sup>29</sup> Jesus told them a story. “Look at the fig tree and all the trees,” he said. <sup>30</sup> “When you see leaves appear on the branches, you know that summer is near. <sup>31</sup> In the same way, when you see these things happening, you will know that God’s kingdom is near.

<sup>32</sup> “What I’m about to tell you is true. The people living at that time will certainly not pass away until all these things have happened. <sup>33</sup> Heaven and earth will pass away. But my words will never pass away.

<sup>34</sup> “Be careful. If you aren’t, your hearts will be loaded down with wasteful living, drunkenness and the worries of life. Then the day the Son of Man returns will close on you like a trap. You will not be expecting it. <sup>35</sup> That day will come upon every person who lives on the whole earth.

<sup>36</sup> “Always keep watching. Pray that you will be able to escape all that is about to happen. Also, pray that you will not be judged guilty when the Son of Man comes.”

<sup>37</sup> Each day Jesus taught at the temple. And each evening he went to spend the night on the hill called the Mount of Olives. <sup>38</sup> All the people came to the temple early in the morning. They wanted to hear Jesus speak.

*New International Reader’s Version® (NIRV®, 1996)*

**ལུ་གཡུ་ 21:25-37 ལུ་གཡུ་ 21:25-37**

<sup>25</sup> ཡང་ཉི་མ་དང་། ཟස་བཀ་ ལྷན་མའི་ཉུག་མཐུང་བར་འགྱུར་ལ། རྒྱ་མཚོ་དང་ཐ་དྲུབ་ཀྱི་འཕར་སྐྱེ་བོ་སྣ་ ནམས་གཞིའི་སྡེ་གི་མི་རིགས་སེམས་འཇུག་ཏེ་སྤྲུག་བསྐྱུ་ཆེན་པོ་འབྱུང་བར་འགྱུར། <sup>26</sup> བར་སྤང་ཁམས་ ཀྱི་དབང་ལྷན་ནམས་གཡོ་བར་འགྱུར་བས་ས་གཞི་ལ་གང་འབྱུང་བར་འགྱུར་བ་ལ་འཛིགས་ནས་མི་རྣམས་དྲན་པ་ འཕོར་བར་འགྱུར། <sup>27</sup> དེའི་དུས་སུ་མི་རྣམས་ཀྱིས་མིའི་རིགས་ཀྱི་བྱ་ཁོང་རང་དབང་དང་གཟི་བཅིང་ཆེན་པོ་དང་ བཅས་སྦྱིན་པ་ཞིག་གི་ནང་དུ་འབྱོན་པར་མཐོང་ཡོང་། <sup>28</sup> དོན་འདི་ཚོ་འབྱུང་སྐབས་ཁྱེད་ཚོ་ལངས་ནས་ཡར་ ལྷོས་ཤིག གང་ཡིན་ཞེས། འཁྱེད་ཀྱི་ཐར་བའི་དུས་ཐོན་ལ་ཉེ་བ་ཡིན་པའི་ཞེས་གསུངས།

<sup>29</sup> དེ་ནས་ཁོང་གིས་“བསེལ་ལའ་ལ་སོགས་པའི་ཤིང་ནམས་དབེ་ཞིག་ལོངས། <sup>30</sup> དེའི་ལོ་མ་འབྲས་མ་ཐག་ཁྱེད་ ཚོས་དེ་མཐོང་བ་དང་། དབྱར་ཁའི་དུས་ཉེ་བར་ཡོང་བ་རང་ཤུགས་ཀྱིས་ཤེས། <sup>31</sup> དེ་བཞིན་དུ་ཁྱེད་ཚོས་དོན་ དེ་རྣམས་བྱུང་བ་མཐོང་ཆོ། དགོན་མཚོག་གི་རྒྱལ་སྤིན་ཉེ་བར་སླེབས་ཡོད་པ་ཉོགས་པར་འགྱུར། <sup>32</sup> དམ་ཁྱེད་ ཚོར་བདེན་པར་ཟེར་རྒྱུ། མི་རབས་འདི་མེད་པར་མ་གྱུར་བའི་སྔོན་ལ་དོན་འདི་ཐམས་ཅད་འབྱུང་བར་འགྱུར།

<sup>33</sup> གནམ་ས་གཉིས་ནི་འདེམ་པར་འགྱུར་ཡང་དེ་བཞག་འདེམ་པར་མི་འགྱུར་རོ། <sup>34</sup> སྦྱོད་པ་ངན་བ་དང་། ར་བཟེལ། འཚོ་བའི་སྒོར་གྱི་སེམས་ཁུལ་སོགས་ཀྱིས་ཁྱེད་མི་གཞོན་པའི་ཕྱིར་དང་། ཉིན་མོ་དེས་རྩི་ལྷར་ འཁྱེད་ཚོ་འཛིན་པར་མི་འགྱུར་བའི་ཆེད་དུ་དོགས་ཐོན་གྱིས་ཤིག <sup>35</sup> གང་ལགས་ཟེར་ན། ཉིན་མོ་དེ་ནི་ས་ གཞིའི་སྡེ་གི་མི་ལྷན་ལ་འབབ་པར་འགྱུར་རེས་ཡིན། <sup>36</sup> འབྱུང་བར་འགྱུར་བའི་དོན་དེ་ཐམས་ཅད་ལས་ཐར་ གྱུབ་པའི་སྤྱོད་པ་ཡིན་པ་དང་། མིའི་རིགས་ཀྱི་བྱ་ཁོང་སྐུ་མཐུན་དུ་ལངས་ནས་སྦྱོད་གྱུབ་པའི་སྤོན་ལམ་འདེབས་ཏེ། དུས་ཉུག་ཏུ་དོགས་ཐོན་བྱས་ཤིག”ཅེས་གསུངས། <sup>37</sup> ཉིན་ལྟར་ཁོང་གིས་མཚོང་ཁང་ཆེན་མོའི་བྱུགས་རང་ ཚོས་བརྟན་གནང་བ་དང་། མཚོན་མོར་ཁོང་ཕྱི་ལོ་ལྷ་ལེབས་ནས་སྐྱུར་བྱེ་བའི་ཤིང་གི་རི་ལ་བཞུགས།

## Vocabulary Practice

### Exercise 2:

Use the vocabulary words provided to complete the following sentences taken from the text above (change the form as necessary). Try and do them from memory (without looking at the text).

miraculous	puzzled	roaring	tossing	to faint	fig tree
pass away	loaded down		wasteful living		trap
terrible	drunkenness		guilty	escape	

1. In the final days of earth there will be \_\_\_\_\_ signs in the sun, moon and stars.
2. At that time, the nations will be in \_\_\_\_\_ pain and \_\_\_\_\_ by the \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ of the sea.
3. People will worry about what is happening in the world and terror will make them \_\_\_\_\_.
4. To help them understand, Jesus told them a story about the \_\_\_\_\_ and all the trees.
5. Jesus said heaven and earth will \_\_\_\_\_ but his words would not.
6. We should be careful. If we don't, our hearts will be \_\_\_\_\_ with \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_ and the worries of life.
7. If you live in this way, the day the Son of Man returns will close on you like a \_\_\_\_\_.
8. Jesus said, "Keep watching and pray that you will be able to \_\_\_\_\_ all that is about to happen."
9. Jesus also reminded us to pray that we would not be judged \_\_\_\_\_ when the Son of Man comes.

### Exercise 3:

Practice every day usage of these words by using the vocabulary words in the box to complete the following sentences (change the form as necessary).

miraculous	puzzled	roaring	tossing	faint	fig tree
pass away	loaded down		wasteful living		drunkenness
trap	terrible	guilty	escape		

1. The hunter made a \_\_\_\_\_ to catch the rabbit.
2. The man wept in front of the court and admitted he was \_\_\_\_\_ of committing the crime.
3. He is a very strange man and I often feel quite \_\_\_\_\_ by what he says.
4. The angry lion spent all night \_\_\_\_\_ in his cage.
5. I failed the test, lost my phone, hurt my ankle and forgot my schoolbooks! What a \_\_\_\_\_ day.
6. She looked very pale and seemed dizzy from the hot weather and I was afraid she would \_\_\_\_\_, so I told her to lay down.
7. The fruit from a \_\_\_\_\_ is delicious. Have you ever tried it?
8. The way she got better from her sickness was absolutely \_\_\_\_\_! God answered our prayers.
9. \_\_\_\_\_ is a big problem in some places and people really need to be careful about how much alcohol they have.
10. The \_\_\_\_\_ of the boat in the huge waves made many people sick.
11. When I \_\_\_\_\_ you can have my books, but please give my other things to my sister.
12. The prisoners were sitting together, whispering and discussing how they might \_\_\_\_\_.
13. Those yaks were \_\_\_\_\_ with big bags of salt and other things.
14. He quickly spent all his money on \_\_\_\_\_ and had to go home to his parents to say he was sorry and ask for help.

## Comprehension Questions

1. When the end of time is near, what will be different about the sun, moon and stars?
2. When we see the Son of Man (Jesus) coming back to earth from heaven (in the clouds), we will be filled with joy and hope! What is close (coming next)?
3. How does a fig tree tell you that summer is coming?
4. For those whose lives are filled with wasteful living, drunkenness and the worries of life, what will happen when the Son of Man (Jesus) returns to the earth to bring God's kingdom?
5. According to verse 35, when Jesus returns to the earth, will anyone be able to hide from him?
6. When we think about Jesus' return to the earth, how should we pray?
7. What did Jesus do each day at the temple?

## Deeper Understanding

1. Why are the people in terror when they see the signs mentioned in verses 25-26?
2. When we see the fig tree grow leaves, we know that summer is coming. What will show us that the time is coming for Jesus to return and bring God's kingdom to earth?
3. The time between the signs mentioned in verses 25-26 and the return of Jesus is very short. How do we know this (verse 32)?
4. Will heaven and earth always exist?

## Beyond the Text

1. Why will the nations of the earth be in terrible pain (verse 25)?
2. Why do you think God will cause the sun, moon and stars to shake, the seas to roar and toss, and the people to faint in terror?
3. Verse 28 has the phrase, "The time when you will be set free will be very close." Who is being set free, and what are they being set free from?
4. How would you describe "wasteful living"?
5. When God's kingdom comes to the earth, what changes do you think He will make?
6. If "heaven and earth pass away" then what is left?
7. Jesus could return at any moment. This is great news for his followers. This will not be good for those who don't follow him. Are you ready for Jesus' return?

## Answers

### Exercise 1:

1. D 2. H 3. B 4. F 5. M 6. K 7. E  
8. C 9. N 10. L 11. G 12. A 13. I 14. J

### Exercise 2:

1. miraculous 2. terrible ; puzzled; roaring; tossing 3. faint  
4. fig tree 5. pass away 6. loaded down; wasteful living; drunkenness  
7. trap 8. escape 9. guilty

### Exercise 3:

1. trap 2. guilty 3. puzzled 4. roaring 5. terrible  
6. faint 7. fig tree 8. miraculous 9. drunkenness  
10. tossing 11. pass away 12. escape 13. loaded down  
14. wasteful living

### Comprehension Questions:

1. The sun, moon and stars will be shaken from their places.
2. When we see the Son of Man (Jesus) coming back to earth from heaven (in the clouds), we know that in a VERY short time, all believers will be set free from the governments of men and placed under the kingship of Jesus.
3. When leaves begin to appear on the branches of a fig tree, you know that summer is coming.
4. Those whose lives are filled with wasteful living, drunkenness and the worries of life will be trapped and unable to escape God's judgment.
5. There will be no place to hide when Jesus returns to the earth. That day will affect everyone!
6. We should pray that we will be able to escape all that will happen on that day, and we should pray that we will not be judged guilty on the day when Jesus returns to the earth.
7. He taught at the temple.

### Deeper Understanding:

1. If the sun, moon and stars are shaken from their places, this will likely bring many disasters upon the earth, as will the roaring and tossing of the seas. These disasters will bring MUCH pain.
2. When we see the signs of the sun, moon and stars shaken from their place, as well as the roaring and tossing of the seas, then we know that the return of Jesus is very near!
3. Verse 32 tells us that the people alive at that time will not pass away (die) before Jesus returns (it will happen within their lifetime).
4. Verse 33 tells us that heaven and earth will pass away (which means they will come to an end). However, it doesn't tell us when that will happen. The Bible teaches that God will create a new heaven and a new earth at some time in the future, but this passage doesn't tell us when that will occur.

## Chapter 19

# Trials and Temptations

---

### Pre-Reading

1. Who do you ask for advice when you need to make a decision?
2. When you are facing trouble how do you usually feel?
3. Do hard times in your life make you stronger or weaker?

### Vocabulary Definitions

#### Exercise 1:

In the parenthesis next to the following vocabulary words, write the letter of its corresponding definition. In addition, write the Tibetan translation of the vocabulary word in the space to the right. One has been done for you. Use a dictionary to look-up words you don't know.

- |                           |        |   |
|---------------------------|--------|---|
| 1. wisdom ( )             | _____  | A. to slowly disappear; to lose strength or color               |
| 2. to decide ( )          | _____  | B. knowledge learned from experience or God                     |
| 3. position ( )           | _____  | C. to decide; to choose what to do                              |
| 4. to fade away ( )       | _____  | D. to cause someone to want to do something wrong               |
| 5. blossoms ( )           | _____  | E. buying and selling in order to make a living                 |
| 6. business ( )           | _____  | F. to make a choice after thinking about something              |
| 7. crown ( I )            | ཙན་པན་ | G. small flowers often on fruit trees or grass                  |
| 8. to tempt ( )           | _____  | H. to trick or deceive someone                                  |
| 9. to fool ( )            | _____  | I. gold or silver circular "hat" worn on a king or queen's head |
| 10. perfect ( )           | _____  | J. to persevere; to not quit; to continue                       |
| 11. make up your mind ( ) | _____  | K. without any mistakes, flaws or faults                        |
| 12. to keep on going ( )  | _____  | L. the place someone or something is in relation to another     |

Text: James 1:2-18

<sup>2</sup> My brothers and sisters, you will face all kinds of trouble. When you do, think of it as pure joy. <sup>3</sup> Your faith will be put to the test. You know that when that happens it will produce in you the strength to continue. <sup>4</sup> The strength to keep going must be allowed to finish its work. Then you will be all you should be. You will have everything you need.

<sup>5</sup> If any of you need wisdom, ask God for it. He will give it to you. God gives freely to everyone. He doesn't find fault.

<sup>6</sup> But when you ask, you must believe. You must not doubt. People who doubt are like waves of the sea. The wind blows and tosses them around. <sup>7</sup> A man like that shouldn't expect to receive anything from the Lord. <sup>8</sup> He can't make up his mind. He can never decide what to do.

<sup>9</sup> A believer who finds himself in a low position in life should be proud that God has given him a high position. <sup>10</sup> But someone who is rich should take pride in his low position. That's because he will fade away like a wild flower.

<sup>11</sup> The sun rises. Its burning heat dries up the plants. Their blossoms fall. Their beauty is destroyed. In the same way, a rich person will fade away even as he goes about his business.

<sup>12</sup> Blessed is the man who keeps on going when times are hard. After he has come through them, he will receive a crown. The crown is life itself. God has promised it to those who love him.

<sup>13</sup> When you are tempted, you shouldn't say, "God is tempting me." God can't be tempted by evil. And he doesn't tempt anyone.

<sup>14</sup> But your own evil longings tempt you. They lead you on and drag you away.

<sup>15</sup> When they are allowed to grow, they give birth to sin. When sin has grown up, it gives birth to death.

<sup>16</sup> My dear brothers and sisters, don't let anyone fool you. <sup>17</sup> Every good and perfect gift is from God. It comes down from the Father. He created the heavenly lights. He does not change like shadows that move.

<sup>18</sup> God chose to give us new birth through the message of truth. He wanted us to be the first and best of everything he created.

New International Reader's Version® (NIRV®, 1996)

ཡ་ཀོབ། 1:2-18 雅各书 1:2-18

<sup>2</sup> ངའི་སྲུང་ལྷན་ཆུང་ལ། ཉམས་ཚེད་སྣ་ཚོགས་ཕྱོད་སྐབས་དགའ་སློབ་ཅི་ཙམ་ཤིག་\* <sup>3</sup> གང་ལགས་ཟེར་ན། དད་པ་ལ་ཚོད་ལྷ་ཕྱོད་བའི་སློབ་པ་བཟོད་པའི་སེམས་སྐྱེ་བ་ཁྱེད་ཀྱིས་ཤེས། <sup>4</sup> ཡང་ཁྱེད་ཚོ་མ་ཚང་བ་མེད་པར་སླིབ་ཞིང་ཡོངས་སུ་རྫོགས་པར་འགྱུར་བའི་ཚེད་དུ་བཟོད་པའི་སེམས་དེས་བྱ་བ་ཚར་བར་བྱེད་དུ་རྒྱག་  
<sup>5</sup> ཁྱེད་ཚོའི་ནང་ནས་སུ་ཞིག་ལ་ཤེས་རབ་མ་ཚང་ན། སློབ་འདོགས་ཅི་ཡང་མི་མཛད་པར་ཐམས་ཅད་ལ་ལྷག་པར་གནང་མཁན་དཀོན་མཚོག་ལ་གསོལ་བ་ཐོབ་དང་། གནང་བར་འགྱུར། <sup>6</sup> འོན་ཀྱང་མི་དེས་ཐོམ་ཅི་ཡང་མེད་པར་དད་པའི་ངང་ནས་གསོལ་བ་འདེབས་དགོས། གང་ལགས་ཟེར་ན། ཐོམ་ལྡན་པ་ནི་རྒྱ་མཚོའི་རྩ་རྒྱབས་རྒྱུད་གིས་འདེད་ཅིང་འཕྱར་བ་དང་འབྲེལ་ཡིན། <sup>7-8</sup> ཡང་སློབ་ཅི་གཉིས་ཅན་ཏེ་སློབ་ལམ་ཀུན་ལ་མི་བརྟན་པས་གཙོ་བོ་དཀོན་མཚོག་ནས་ཅི་ཞིག་འཕྲོབ་རྒྱུ་ཡིན་པ་མ་སོམས་ཤིག། <sup>9</sup> དཀོན་མཚོག་གིས་སྲུང་ལྷན་དམའ་བ་ལ་མཐོ་བར་མཛད་པས་ཁོས་དགའ་བར་བྱེད་དགོས། <sup>10</sup> ཡང་དཀོན་མཚོག་གིས་སྲུང་ལྷན་པོ་ལ་དམའ་བར་མཛད་པས་ཁོས་དགའ་བར་བྱེད་འོས། གང་ཡིན་ཞེ་ན། རྩ་ཐང་གི་མེ་ཏོག་ལྟར་ཁོ་འདེད་པར་འགྱུར་ཏེ།  
<sup>11</sup> ཉི་མ་ཤར་ནས་དེའི་ཚ་རྒྱུད་དལ་པོས་མེ་ཏོག་སྐམ་ཞིང་། འདབ་མ་སར་ལྷུངས་ནས་དེའི་མཛེས་སྲུག་འཛིག་པར་འགྱུར། དེ་ལྟར་སྲུག་པོའང་ལས་ཀ་བྱེད་པའི་ལམ་དུ་འཛིག་པར་འགྱུར། <sup>12</sup> ཉམས་ཚེད་ཕྱོད་དུས་བཟོད་བསྐྱེད་བྱེད་མཁན་མི་དེ་བདེའོ། ཁོ་ལ་གདང་འཛིག་ཐོབ་ནས་གཙོ་བོས་ཁོང་ལ་བརྟེན་བར་འཛིན་མཁན་རྣམས་ལ་དབག་མེད་ཚོ་ཡི་ཚུང་པན་ཞལ་གྱིས་བཞེས་པ་དེ་འཕྲོབ་དེས་ཡིན། <sup>13</sup> སླུ་བྱིད་ཕྱོད་སྐབས་མི་སུ་ཞིག་གིས་“དཀོན་མཚོག་གིས་ང་ལ་སླུ་བྱིད་མཛད་”ཅེས་ཟེར་མི་རུང་། གང་ཡིན་ཞེ་ན། ངན་པས་དཀོན་མཚོག་ལ་སླུ་བྱིད་བྱེད་མི་བྱིད་ཅིང་། ཁོང་ཉིད་ཀྱིས་སུ་ལ་ཡང་སླུ་བྱིད་མཛད་མི་བྱིད། <sup>14</sup> འོན་ཀྱང་མི་རྣམས་རང་རང་གི་འདོད་ཆགས་ཀྱིས་སླུ་ཞིང་འདྲན་ཏེ་སླུ་བྱིད་ཕྱོད། <sup>15</sup> དེ་ནས་འདོད་ཆགས་ཀྱི་འབྲས་བུ་སླིབ་ཏེ་སྲིག་ཉེས་སྐྱེ་ཞིང་། སྲིག་ཉེས་ཀྱི་འབྲས་བུ་སླིབ་ཏེ་འཚིབ་སྐྱེ། <sup>16</sup> ངའི་གཅེས་པའི་སྲུང་ལྷན་རྣམས། མགོ་མ་འཁོར་ཞིག། <sup>17</sup> གནང་སྲིབ་བཟང་པོ་དང་ཡང་དག་པ་ཀུན་སྟེང་ནས་ཉི་ལྗང་གསུམ་གྱི་བཀོད་པ་པོ་སྟེ་ཡབ་དཀོན་མཚོག་ལས་འབབ། ཁོང་ལ་འགྱུར་བའམ་གཡོ་བའི་གྲིབ་མས་མ་གོས་ཤིང་འགྱུར་མེད་ལགས་སོ།  
<sup>18</sup> ཁོང་གིས་གང་བཀོད་པའི་ནང་ནས་ང་ཚོ་ནི་ལོ་ཏོག་གི་ཕྱད་དུ་འགྱུར་བའི་ཚེད་དུ། ཁོང་གི་དགོངས་པ་ལྟར་བདེན་པའི་བཀའ་ཡི་སློབ་པ་ཚོ་གསར་དུ་སྐྱེ་བར་མཛད།

\* སྲུང་ལྷན་གཙོ་བོ་ཡི་བྱ་ལ་དད་པ་དང་ལྷན་པའི་སློབ་པ་དང་བྱུང་མེད་རྣམས་ཡིན།

## Vocabulary Practice

### Exercise 2:

Use the vocabulary words provided to complete the following sentences taken from the text above (change the form as necessary). Try and do them from memory (without looking at the text).

blossoms	wisdom	business	position	crown	to fool
perfect	to keep on going	to decide	to make up your mind		
tempted	to fade away				

1. If someone needs \_\_\_\_\_ they should ask God for it, and he will freely give it to them.
2. A person who doubts can never \_\_\_\_\_ what to do.
3. A man like that shouldn't expect to receive anything from the Lord, because he can't \_\_\_\_\_ mind.
4. A believer who finds himself in a low \_\_\_\_\_ in life should be proud that God has made it high!
5. Someone who is rich should take pride in their low position because they will \_\_\_\_\_ like a wild flower.
6. The sun's burning heat dries up the plants and their \_\_\_\_\_ fall.
7. Blessed is the man who \_\_\_\_\_ when times are hard.
8. After he has gone through hard times, he will receive the \_\_\_\_\_ which is life itself.
9. Brothers and sisters, don't let anyone \_\_\_\_\_ you. Everything good comes from God.
10. A rich person will fade away even as he goes about his \_\_\_\_\_.
11. God can't be \_\_\_\_\_ by evil, nor does he do it to anyone else.
12. Every good and \_\_\_\_\_ gift comes from God.

### Exercise 3:

Practice every day usage of these words by using the vocabulary words in the box to complete the following sentences (change the form as necessary).

wisdom	to decide	position	to fade away	blossoms
business	crown	tempted	to fool	perfect
to keep on going	to make up your mind			

1. To get to the village, the man said to turn left, cross the bridge and then \_\_\_\_\_ up the valley.
2. Some people are smart but don't make good decisions because they don't have \_\_\_\_\_.
3. Those workers don't get paid much and feel like they have a low \_\_\_\_\_ in society.
4. If a painting is left too long in the sun the color will \_\_\_\_\_.
5. Half way through that difficult job I felt \_\_\_\_\_ to quit, but I continued working and am glad I finally finished it.
6. Before you start a new \_\_\_\_\_, you need a plan, a location, some employees and a lot of money.
7. In spring those trees have pink \_\_\_\_\_ that are beautiful and fragrant.
8. She couldn't \_\_\_\_\_ which dress she liked more so he bought her both of them.
9. You can't \_\_\_\_\_ me! I don't believe your lies! I know you were the one who did it.
10. At the museum they saw the King's clothes, sword and even his golden \_\_\_\_\_.
11. He got 100% on the exam! A \_\_\_\_\_ score.

## Comprehension Questions

1. When you face troubles, how should you react?
2. Is there a purpose in having our faith tested? What is achieved?
3. Where does wisdom come from?
4. What has God promised to those who love him?
5. Where does temptation come from? Where does it lead?
6. What kinds of gifts does God give?

## Deeper Understanding

1. Why should we respond to troubles as described in verse 2?
2. How do troubles strengthen a person's faith?
3. What is the connection between belief, doubt, and waves?
4. How can the person in verse 9 be in both a low position and a high position at the same time?
5. How can the rich person in verses 10 and 11 take pride in his low position?

## Beyond the Text

1. What do you think "the crown of life" is referring to in verse 12?
2. Verse 14 explains that temptation leads to sin and sin leads to death. Is this physical death?
3. What is the "new birth" mentioned in verse 18?
4. What do you think are some of the "good and perfect gifts" mentioned in verse 17?
5. Verse 18 also mentions that He wanted "us" to be the first and best. Who is the "us" referring to? What does it mean that "we" are the first and best?

## Answers

### Exercise 1:

1. B   2. F   3. L   4. A   5. G   6. E  
7. I   8. D   9. H   10. K   11. C   12. J

### Exercise 2:

1. wisdom   2. decide   3. make up his   4. position  
5. fade away   6. blossoms   7. keeps on going   8. crown  
9. fool   10. business   11. tempted   12. perfect

### Exercise 3:

1. keep on going   2. wisdom   3. position   4. fade away   5. tempted  
6. business   7. blossoms   8. make up her mind   9. fool  
10. crown   11. perfect

## Comprehension Questions:

1. When facing troubles we should respond with joy!
2. Yes, it gives us strength to continue in our faith and helps us to be all that we should be.
3. Wisdom comes from God.
4. The crown of life is given to those who love God (verse 12).
5. Temptation comes from our own evil desires, which then grow and lead to sin. Sin then grows and leads to death.
6. God gives good and perfect gifts.

## Deeper Understanding:

1. Troubles give us an opportunity to see if God is really present and able to help.
2. When troubles occur, we have the opportunity to ask God for help. When we experience God's presence in our times of trouble, our faith becomes strengthened. We begin to see God working in our lives. It is then that our faith becomes more than just ideas about God. God becomes a person who is active in helping us to live life.
3. God wants us to believe in Him. He is firm and unchanging. People who doubt are like waves which go up and down, up and down, back and forth. When people keep changing their mind like the changing of waves, they become unstable and get pushed around by the circumstances of their lives. Instead they should believe and stand on our God who is called the Rock. Though the waves of circumstances move around the Rock, the Rock does not move. So, when troubles come, we must choose to bring God into the situation and ask Him for direction.
4. A person who is "low" in this life refers to someone who has a low position in society. People with little money, education, power, or resources are less likely to depend on themselves. When they encounter troubles, they are more likely to reach out to God. This is the best action for ALL people, because we are created beings and NEED our creator. This is the position that God desires (God sees this as "high").
5. The natural response of those who have lots of money, education, power, or resources is to believe that they deserve what they have. They have these things because they are better than others. They become prideful and this is a very dangerous position before God. God is asking the "rich" to remember that money, education, power, and resources are NOTHING. Compared to God, people are nothing. We are all LOW! The rich are reminded to take pride in the fact that even though they are LOW before God, He loves them.

# Chapter 20

## Faith and Works: What's the Relationship?

### Pre-Reading

1. Should there be a connection between what we believe and the way we live? Can you give some examples?
2. If someone has no faith, are they free to live any way they like? Why or why not?

### Vocabulary Definitions

#### Exercise 1:

In the parenthesis next to the following vocabulary words, write the letter of its corresponding definition. In addition, write the Tibetan translation of the vocabulary word in the space to the right of the definition. One has been done for you. Use a dictionary to look-up words you don't know.

- |                               |  |
|-------------------------------|--|
| 1. to pay attention ( ) _____ | A. to talk highly or favorably about yourself    |
| 2. to get rid of ( ) _____    | B. something that has been made unclean          |
| 3. to suppose ( ) _____       | C. not clean and orderly                         |
| 4. belief ( ) _____           | D. to state that something is true or a fact     |
| 5. fault ( ) _____            | E. mistake; something not good or right          |
| 6. widow ( L ) _____          | F. to listen carefully;                          |
| 7. polluted ( ) _____         | G. to shake the body or part of the body lightly |
| 8. to claim ( ) _____         | H. to remove; to completely take out             |
| 9. to tremble ( ) _____       | I. strong feeling of unhappiness or anger        |
| 10. bitter ( ) _____          | J. to act other than you really are or feel      |
| 11. getting ahead ( ) _____   | K. to suggest as a possibility; "What if"        |
| 12. to brag ( ) _____         | L. woman whose husband has died                  |
| 13. mess ( ) _____            | M. the ideas you believe are true                |
| 14. to pretend ( ) _____      | N. becoming better than others                   |

*Text: James 1:19-27; 2:14-19; 3:13-18*

#### James 1:19-27

<sup>19</sup> My dear brothers and sisters, pay attention to what I say. Everyone should be quick to listen. But they should be slow to speak. They should be slow to get angry. <sup>20</sup> A man's anger doesn't produce the kind of life God wants.

<sup>21</sup> So get rid of everything that is dirty and sinful. Get rid of the evil that is all around us. Don't be too proud to accept the word that is planted in you. It can save you.

<sup>22</sup> Don't just listen to the word. You fool yourselves if you do that. You must do what it says.

<sup>23</sup> Suppose you listen to the word but don't do what it says. Then you are like a man who looks at his face in a mirror. <sup>24</sup> After looking at himself, he leaves. Right away he forgets what he looks like.

<sup>25</sup> But suppose you take a good look at the perfect law that gives freedom. You keep looking at it. You don't forget what you've heard, but you do what the law says. Then you will be blessed in what you do.

<sup>26</sup> Suppose you think your beliefs are right because of how you live. But you don't control what you say. Then you are fooling yourselves. Your beliefs are not worth anything at all.

<sup>27</sup> Here are the kinds of beliefs that God our Father accepts as pure and without fault. When widows and children who have no parents are in trouble, take care of them. And keep yourselves from being polluted by the world.

#### James 2:14-19

<sup>14</sup> My brothers and sisters, what good is it if people claim they have faith but don't act like it? Can that kind of faith save them?

<sup>15</sup> Suppose a brother or sister has no clothes or food. <sup>16</sup> Suppose one of you says to them, "Go. I hope everything turns out fine for you. Keep warm. Eat well." And you do nothing about what they really need. Then what good have you done?

<sup>17</sup> It is the same with faith. If it doesn't cause us to do something, it's dead.

<sup>18</sup> But someone will say, "You have faith. I do good works."

Show me your faith that doesn't do good works. And I will show you my faith by what I do. <sup>19</sup> You believe there is one God. Good! Even the demons believe that. And they tremble!



**James 3:13-18**

<sup>13</sup> Are any of you wise and understanding? You should show it by living a good life. Wise people aren't proud when they do good works.

<sup>14</sup> But suppose your hearts are jealous and bitter. Suppose you are concerned only about getting ahead. Don't brag about it. Don't say no to the truth. <sup>15</sup> Wisdom like that doesn't come down from heaven. It belongs to the earth. It doesn't come from the Holy Spirit. It comes from the devil.

<sup>16</sup> Are you jealous? Are you concerned only about getting ahead? Then your life will be a mess. You will be doing all kinds of evil things.

<sup>17</sup> But the wisdom that comes from heaven is pure. That's the most important thing about it. And that's not all. It also loves peace. It thinks about others. It obeys. It is full of mercy and good fruit. It is fair. It doesn't pretend to be what it is not.

<sup>18</sup> Those who make peace should plant peace like a seed. If they do, it will produce a crop of right living.

*New International Reader's Version® (NIRV®, 1996)*

**ཡ་ཀོན། 1:19-26 ; 2:14-19; 3:13-18**

**雅各书 1:19-26 ; 2:14-19; 3:13-18**

<sup>19</sup> ངའི་གཅེས་པའི་སྤྱན་རླུང་སྤུངས། མི་ཐམས་ཅད་ཉན་པ་ལ་མཚོན་གས། ཤོད་པ་ལ་དལ་ཞིང་། ཁོང་ཁོ་ ལངས་མི་བདེ་བར་འགྱུར་དགོས་པ་ཤེས་པར་གྱིས་ཤིག། <sup>20</sup> གང་ལགས་ཟེར་ན། མི་རྣམས་ཀྱི་ཁོང་ཁོས་དགོན་ མཚོན་གྱི་དྲང་བདེན་གྱི་བྱ་བ་སྤྱད་མི་སྲིད། <sup>21</sup> དེའི་ཕྱིར་མི་གཙང་བ་ཀུན་དང་རབ་སེམས་སྤྲུག་མ་དག་སྤངས་ཏེ། སྤྲེམས་རྒྱུང་དང་ནམ་ཁྲིལ་ཚོ་ཐར་བར་མཛད་ཐུབ་པའི་བཀའ་བྱིད་ཀྱི་སེམས་སྲུབ་ལུགས་པ་དེ་དང་ལེན་བྱེས་ཤིག། <sup>22</sup> རང་གིས་རང་ལ་མགོ་སྐོར་གཏོང་བའི་བཀའ་ཐོས་མཁན་འབའ་ཞིག་ཏུ་མི་འགྱུར་བར། བཀའ་སྤྱད་མཁན་ དུ་འགྱུར་ཞིག། <sup>23</sup> བཀའ་ཐོས་ནས་མི་སྤྱད་མཁན་ནི་མེ་ལོང་ལ་བལྟས་ནས་རང་གི་གདོང་པ་མཐོང་མཁན་ལྟར་ ཡིན། <sup>24</sup> གང་ལགས་ཤེ་ན། རང་ལ་བལྟས་ཏེ་མེ་ལོང་དང་ཁ་བྲལ་རྗེས་འཕྲལ་དུ་ཕྱི་ལྟར་ཡོད་པ་བརྗོད། <sup>25</sup> འོན་ཀྱང་ཡང་དག་པ་དང་སྤིག་ཉེས་དང་འཚིབ་ལས་ཐར་བའི་བཀའ་བྲིམས་ལ་ནན་གྱིས་བལྟས་ནས། བརྩོན་ འགྲུས་བྱེད་མཁན་ནི་བཀའ་ཐོས་ནས་བརྗོད་པ་མིན་ཏེ་བཀའ་སྤྱད་ནས་ལག་ལེན་བྱེད་པ་ཡིན་པས་ཁོའི་བྱ་བ་ལ་ བྱིན་གྱིས་བརྒྱབས་པར་འགྱུར་རོ། <sup>26</sup> གལ་ཏེ་མི་ཞིག་གིས་ངོ་ཚོས་སེམས་དང་ལྷན་པའི་མི་ཞིག་ཡིན་སྟེ་སྤུངས་ནས་ རང་གི་ལུ་ལ་ཁ་ལོ་མ་སྤྱད་བར་རང་གིས་རང་ལ་མགོ་སྐོར་བཏང་ན། མི་དེའི་ཚོས་ཕན་མེད་ཡིན། <sup>27</sup> ཡལ་

དགོན་མཚོན་གྱི་སྤྱན་རླུང་སྤུངས་མིན་དང་སྤྱོད་མེད་པའི་ཚོས་ནི་སྤྲུག་བསྐྱེད་མེད་པའི་དུ་སྤྲུག་དང་ཡུགས་མོ་རྣམས་ ལ་བྱམས་སྤོང་བྱེད་ལ། རང་ཉིད་ལ་ཡང་འཇིག་རྟེན་གྱི་མི་གཙང་བ་མ་འགོ་བར་སྤྱད་བ་དེ་ཡིན་ནོ།།

**2:14-19**

<sup>14</sup> ངའི་སྤྱན་རླུང་སྤུངས། གལ་སྲིད་མི་ཞིག་གིས་དང་པ་མཚོན་བྱེད་གྱི་བྱ་བ་མ་བྱས་པར་དང་པ་ཡོད་ཅེས་སྤྲུས་ན་ཅི་ སམ། དང་པ་དེས་ལོ་ཐར་བར་བྱེད་ཐུབ་བམ། <sup>15</sup> གལ་ཏེ་སྤྱན་རླུང་སྤུངས་ལ་གོས་སམ་ཉེན་རེའི་ཁ་ཟས་མི་འདྲང་ བར། <sup>16</sup> གཟུགས་པོར་གང་དགོས་པ་མ་སྤྱིན་པར་ཁྱོད་ཚོའི་ནང་ནས་མི་ཞིག་གིས་“བདེ་བའི་དང་ནས་སོང་། དྲོད་དང་འགྲང་བར་འགྱུར་བར་ཤོག”ཅེས་ཟེར་ན་ཅི་སམ། <sup>17</sup> དེའི་ཕྱིར་བྱ་བ་མི་སྤྱད་པའི་དང་པ་ནི་སྤོང་བའོ། <sup>18</sup> འོན་ཀྱང་མི་ཞིག་གིས་“ཁྱེད་ལ་དང་པ་ཡོད། རང་ལ་བྱ་བ་བཟང་པོ་ཡོད”ཅེས་ཟེར་ཡོང་། ཁྱོད་གྱིས་རང་ལ་ བྱ་སྤོང་དང་བྲལ་ཏེ་རང་གི་དང་པ་བསྟན་ན། རས་ཁྱོད་ལ་བྱ་སྤོང་གྱི་སྐོར་ནས་འདི་དང་པ་སྤོན་པར་བྱ། <sup>19</sup> ཁྱོད་ ཀྱིས་དགོན་མཚོན་གཅིག་རང་ཡིན་པར་དང་པ་བྱེད། དེ་ལེགས་སོ། གདོན་འདྲེས་ཀྱང་དེ་ལྟར་བྱེད་དེ་འཇིགས་ བས་འདུག།

**3:13-18**

<sup>13</sup> ཁྱེད་ཚོའི་ནང་ནས་མཁན་ཤིང་སྤོ་གོས་ཅན་སུ་ཡིན། མི་དེས་སྤོད་ལམ་བཟང་པོ་དང་། ཤེས་རབ་ལས་བྱུང་ བའི་སེམས་དུལ་པོའི་སྐོར་ནས་སྤོན་དགོས། <sup>14</sup> འོན་ཀྱང་ཁྱོད་ཚོའི་སེམས་ལ་སྤྲུག་དོག་དྲག་པོ་དང་འདོད་པ་ཚ་པོ་ ཡོད་ན། རང་གི་ཤེས་རབ་སྐོར་ལྷན་པོ་བྱེད་པའི་སྐོར་ནས་རྒྱན་གཏམ་མ་ཤོད་ཅིག། <sup>15</sup> འདི་ལྟར་གྱི་ཤེས་རབ་ བའི་དགོན་མཚོན་གྱི་ཞིང་ཁམས་ནས་འབབ་པ་མ་ཡིན་ཏེ། འཇིག་རྟེན་འདིའི་ཤེས་རབ། སྤིག་ཉེས་འདོད་ པའི་ཤེས་རབ། བདུད་གྱི་ཤེས་རབ་ཡིན་ནོ། <sup>16</sup> གང་ཡིན་ཞེ་ན། སྤྲུག་དོག་དང་འདོད་པ་ཚ་པོ་ཡོད་སར་ མི་མཐུན་པ་དང་རབ་སྤོད་ཀུན་ཡང་ཡོད། <sup>17</sup> འོན་ཀྱང་དགོན་མཚོན་གྱི་ཞིང་ཁམས་ནས་བྱུང་བའི་ཤེས་རབ་ བའི་དང་པོར་བཅོས་མིན་དང་། གཉེས་པར་ཞིབ་པའི་དགའ་བ། དེ་བཞིན་སེམས་དུལ་པོ། ཡ་རབས། སྤྱིང་རྗེ་འབྲས་བཟང་དང་ལྷན་པ། ཚུགས་རིས་སམ་ཁ་བཅད་དོན་ལ་མི་གནས་པ་ཅི་ཡང་མེད་པ་ཞིག་ཡིན། <sup>18</sup> ཡང་ཞིབ་དེ་སྤྱན་རླུང་སྤུངས་གྱིས་ཞིབ་པའི་དང་ནས་ས་བོན་བཏང་སྟེ་ཡང་དག་པའི་འབྲས་བུ་འཕྲོག།

## Vocabulary Practice

### Exercise 2:

Use the vocabulary words provided to complete the following sentences taken from the text above (change the form as necessary). Try and do them from memory (without looking at the text).

getting ahead      to brag      widow      mess      to claim  
to pay attention      bitter      polluted      to tremble      fault  
to pretend      to get rid of      to suppose      belief

1. James (the author of this passage) wanted the people to \_\_\_\_\_ to the things he was saying.
2. He said that we need to \_\_\_\_\_ the evil that is inside of us.
3. In this passage, James asks, “\_\_\_\_\_ your beliefs are correct, but you don’t follow them. Does your \_\_\_\_\_ help you?”
4. He then gave some examples of beliefs that were good and without \_\_\_\_\_.
5. It is a good thing to help \_\_\_\_\_, as well as children without parents.
6. It is also good to not let yourself become \_\_\_\_\_ by things in the world.
7. If you \_\_\_\_\_ to have faith, then your faith should affect your actions.
8. Does it surprise you that demons fear God and \_\_\_\_\_ ?
9. If you become angry, be careful not to let your hearts become \_\_\_\_\_.
10. Some people are only concerned about \_\_\_\_\_. That is NOT something to \_\_\_\_\_ about. If they continue in that way, their life will become a \_\_\_\_\_.
11. If you have wisdom, then you will not \_\_\_\_\_ to be someone you are not.

### Exercise 3:

Practice every day usage of these words by using the vocabulary words in the box to complete the following sentences (change the form as necessary).

to get ahead      to brag      widow      mess      to claim  
to pay attention      bitter      polluted      tremble      fault  
to pretend      to get rid of      to suppose      belief

1. His \_\_\_\_\_ are very important to him. They affect the way he lives.
2. Her leader was never happy, so whenever she went to his office, she would \_\_\_\_\_.
3. She always \_\_\_\_\_ about her high salary.
4. He always goes to bed late, so every day the teacher must remind him to \_\_\_\_\_.
5. After losing his job, he became very \_\_\_\_\_.
6. He \_\_\_\_\_ to need money for food, but he really wanted to buy drugs.
7. Although she is a \_\_\_\_\_, she has provided well for her children.
8. The accident was his \_\_\_\_\_. He drank several beers before driving.
9. \_\_\_\_\_ you win a million dollars, how would you spend it?
10. He \_\_\_\_\_ to know who did this, but he won’t tell anyone.
11. After the party, the room was a \_\_\_\_\_ !
12. Every spring we try to \_\_\_\_\_ anything we don’t really need.
13. He spends so much time trying to \_\_\_\_\_, that he has no time for family.
14. Because the river is so \_\_\_\_\_, no one can swim in it.

## Comprehension Questions

1. What does James (the author) say we should be quick to do?
2. What does he say we should be slow to do?
3. What doesn't produce the kind of life God wants?
4. What three things should we get rid of?
5. If you can't control what you say, then what is the value of your belief?
6. What are two kinds of beliefs that God our Father accepts as pure and without fault?
7. What does James say about faith that doesn't affect what we do?
8. How does James say he will show his faith?
9. How do we show our wisdom and understanding?
10. What causes hearts to become jealous and bitter?
11. What will happen to those whose hearts are jealous and bitter; those only concerned with getting ahead?
12. What's the most important thing about wisdom from heaven?
13. What are seven other qualities about of wisdom from heaven?

## Deeper Understanding

1. In verse 21 of chapter 1, what does "the word planted in us" refer to? Why would someone be too proud to accept that?
2. Verses 1:23-25 compare looking at the Bible with looking at a mirror. Why do you look at a mirror? Why would you look at the Bible? What should be the effect of studying the Bible?
3. What will happen to someone who looks at the perfect law and does what it says?
4. Verse 2:19 tells us that demons know that God exists. Why do demons tremble before God?
5. What do you think is the problem with the person who said the encouraging words described in verses 2:15-16?
6. The title for this chapter is: Faith and Works: what's the relationship? What does "good works" mean? What is the relationship between what we believe and what we do?
7. Verses 3:17-18 talk about peace and planting peace like a seed. What does "peace" mean in these verses? How do we plant peace? How does this produce a crop of right living? How can our peace with God also be planted like a seed?

## Beyond the Text

1. Why do you think James spends so much time reminding us that our faith needs to affect the way we live?
2. Compare some of these ideas with the previous chapter. How do trials and difficult times make it easier for us to sin? Is it harder to listen when you have had a bad day? Is it easy to get angry when you are going through trials?
3. Compare this with the sermon on mount? Jesus said in Matthew 5:9 "Blessed are those who make peace. They will be called sons of God." How does this relate to verse 20 of chapter one?
4. Jesus was the only one whose faith and works (what he said and what he did) were the same. We have failed and will fail again. But there is grace for us. How does the fact that Jesus succeeded in keeping a perfect life (perfect in belief and perfect in action) affect us? How can that help us?

## Answers

### Exercise 1:

1. F 2. H 3. K 4. M 5. E 6. L 7. B  
8. D 9. G 10. I 11. N 12. A 13. C 14. J

### Exercise 2:

1. pay attention 2. get rid of 3. suppose; belief 4. fault  
5. widows 6. polluted 7. claim 8. tremble 9. bitter  
10. getting ahead; brag; mess 11. pretend

### Exercise 3:

1. belief 2. tremble 3. brags 4. pay attention 5. bitter  
6. pretended 7. widow 8. fault 9. suppose 10. claims  
11. mess 12. get rid of 13. get ahead 14. polluted

### Comprehension Questions:

- To listen.
- To get angry.
- A man's anger.
- Everything dirty, sinful and evil (around us).
- Nothing, not anything.
- Taking care of widows and children with no parents and keeping yourself from being polluted by the world.
- It is dead.
- By what he does.
- By living a good life.
- The devil.
- Their lives will be a mess, they will do all kinds of evil.
- It's pure.
- Not only is it pure but also it: (1) loves peace; (2) thinks about others; (3) obeys; (4 & 5) is full of mercy and good fruit; (6) is fair; and (7) doesn't pretend to be what it is not.

### Deeper Understanding:

- (a) In this passage it most likely refers to the gospel (the good news about what Jesus did for us) because in the last part of verse 21, we are told that, "It can save you." We are all sinners and in need of God's grace and salvation (the gospel). Sometimes "the word" also refers to the Bible (like in verse 23) or even Jesus (like in Chapter 4 of this book).

(b) Pride makes a person believe he/she is good and doesn't need help. God cannot help until a person accepts the truth that he/she cannot live without Him.
- (a) We look in mirrors to see what we look like and to then make changes (like tidying our hair) to look better.

(b) We look in the Bible for the same reason. It shows us our sin (what we really look like) as well as how we should look (like Jesus).

(c) In addition to helping us see the need for change, the Bible also gives us the answer in how to bring about that change: inviting God (in the persons of the Father, Son and Holy Spirit) to help us change.
- They will be blessed.
- God created demons and the demons know that God is greater. The demons know that God has complete power over them and will judge them.
- If someone has a physical need, then kind words have no benefit. If you truly care about those with physical needs, it will require doing something. Real compassion is more than just a feeling, it is also an action.
- "Works" refers to what we do, the way we live our lives. This passage deals with the question, "How does our faith affect the way we live?"
- (a) In this passage, peace means having a good relationship with God and with other people.

(b) We plant peace by encouraging people to have good relationships with each other and with God.

(c) As more and more people live in peace and encourage others to live in peace, that will produce a "crop of right living."

(d) As others see our relationship with God and how it affects our lives, we hope this would plant a seed in their hearts, causing them to desire the same peace in their relationship with God.

# Chapter 21

## Nothing Can Separate Us from God's Love

---

### Pre-Reading

1. In what situations are you willing to endure suffering?
2. Is the world becoming a better place or do you think it is becoming worse?  
What do you think will happen to the world in the future?
3. How would you describe the love that a mother or father has for his/her child?  
Can anything stop that love?

---



---



---



---



---



---



---



---



---



---



---



---



---



---



---



---



---



---



---

### Vocabulary Definitions

#### Exercise 1:

In the parenthesis next to the following vocabulary words, write the letter of its corresponding definition. In addition, write the Tibetan translation of the vocabulary word in the space to the right. One has been done for you. Use a dictionary to look-up words you don't know.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. to compare ( ) _____                    | A. someone belonging to a group   |
| 2. to look forward to ( ) _____            | B. to decay, get old and fall apart   |
| 3. bound to ( ) _____                      | C. in agreement with; not being against   |
| 4. to rot away ( ) _____                   | D. difficult situation  |
| 5. to groan ( ) _____                      | E. to choose a person for a specific position or task (done by someone with authority)                  |
| 6. to adopt ( ) _____                      | F. to be sure with no doubt; completely sure  |
| 7. member ( ) _____                        | G. to say a person has done something wrong or against the law  |
| 8. to appoint ( E ) <u>བསྐྱེད་པ་</u> _____ | H. to make a deep sound because of pain or sadness  |
| 9. in keeping with ( ) _____               | I. to not allow someone to be hurt/harmed   |
| 10. to spare ( ) _____                     | J. to show how two things are the same or different   |
| 11. to bring a charge against ( ) _____    | K. to decide that the penalty for wrong doing is death (done by a judge)                                |
| 12. to sentence to death ( ) _____         | L. to look to the future hoping for good  |
| 13. hard times ( ) _____                   | M. to be in the situation where you need to pay back something  |
| 14. to consider as ( ) _____               | N. something is going to happen and there's no way to change it   |
| 15. to owe ( ) _____                       | O. to think of the person or situation discussed as being like the description that follows this phrase |
| 16. absolutely sure ( ) _____              | P. to make someone else's child your own child under the law  |

**Text: Romans 8:18-39**

<sup>18</sup> What we are suffering now is nothing compared with the glory that will be shown in us. <sup>19</sup> Everything God created looks forward to the time when his children will appear in their full and final glory. <sup>20</sup> The created world was bound to fail. But that was not the result of its own choice. It was planned that way by the One who made it. God planned <sup>21</sup> to set the created world free. He didn't want it to rot away completely. Instead, he wanted it to have the same glorious freedom that his children have.

<sup>22</sup> We know that all that God created has been groaning. It is in pain as if it were giving birth to a child. The created world continues to groan even now. <sup>23</sup> And that's not all. We have the Holy Spirit as the promise of future blessing. But we also groan inside ourselves as we look forward to the time when God will adopt us as full members of his family. Then he will give us everything he has for us. He will raise our bodies and give glory to them.

<sup>24</sup> That's the hope we had when we were saved. But hope that can be seen is no hope at all. Who hopes for what he already has? <sup>25</sup> We hope for what we don't have yet. So we are patient as we wait for it.

<sup>26</sup> In the same way, the Holy Spirit helps us when we are weak. We don't know what we should pray for. But the Spirit himself prays for us. He prays with groans too deep for words. <sup>27</sup> God, who looks into our hearts, knows the mind of the Spirit. And the Spirit prays for God's people just as God wants him to pray.

<sup>28</sup> We know that in all things God works for the good of those who love him. He appointed them to be saved in keeping with his purpose.

<sup>29</sup> God planned that those he had chosen would become like his Son. In that way, Christ will be the first and most honored among many brothers. <sup>30</sup> And those God has planned for, he has also appointed to be saved. Those he has appointed, he has made right with himself. To those he has made right with himself, he has given his glory.

<sup>31</sup> What should we say then? Since God is on our side, who can be against us? <sup>32</sup> God did not spare his own Son. He gave him up for us all. Then won't he also freely give us everything else?

<sup>33</sup> Who can bring any charge against God's chosen ones? God makes us right with himself. <sup>34</sup> Who can sentence us to death? Christ Jesus is at the right hand of God and is also praying for us. He died. More than that, he was raised to life.

<sup>35</sup> Who can separate us from Christ's love? Can trouble or hard times or harm or hunger? Can nakedness or danger or war? <sup>36</sup> It is written,

“Because of you, we face death all day long.  
We are considered as sheep to be killed.” —(Psalm 44:22)

<sup>37</sup> No! In all these things we will do even more than win! We owe it all to Christ, who has loved us.

<sup>38</sup> I am absolutely sure that not even death or life can separate us from God's love. Not even angels or demons, the present or the future, or any powers can do that.

<sup>39</sup> Not even the highest places or the lowest, or anything else in all creation can do that. Nothing at all can ever separate us from God's love because of what Christ Jesus our Lord has done.

*New International Reader's Version® (NIRV®, 1996)*

**རྩ་མཉམས། 8:18-39    罗马书 8:18-39**

<sup>18</sup> ངའི་བསམ་པ་ལ། དེ་དུས་ཀྱི་སྐྱུག་བསྐྱེད་ལ་མི་མཐོང་ས་པའི་དུས་སུ་ངེད་ཀྱི་སྐྱེས་ལ་མཐོན་པར་འགྱུར་བའི་གཟི་བརྟེན་དང་བསྐྱེད་ན་ཅི་ཡང་མིན། <sup>19</sup> དགོན་མཚོག་གིས་གང་བཞུགས་པ་ཐམས་ཅད་ཀྱིས་དགོན་མཚོག་གི་སྐྱེས་ལ་མཐོན་སུམ་དུ་འགྱུར་བར་གཏུང་ཞིང་སྐྱུག་ <sup>20-21</sup> གང་ལགས་ཟེར་ན། དགོན་མཚོག་གིས་གང་བཞུགས་པ་རྣམས་རང་གི་འདོད་པ་ལྟར་མེད་དེ། ཁོང་གི་དགོངས་པ་ལྟར་དོན་མེད་པའི་དབང་དུ་བཅུག་དེ་མི་རེ་བ་བྱེད་དེ་གང་བཞུགས་པ་ལས་བསྐྱེད་ལ་ནས་དགོན་མཚོག་གི་སྐྱེས་ལ་མཐོན་སུམ་ཀྱི་གཟི་བརྟེན་དང་ལྷན་པའི་རང་དབང་འཕྲོད་པའི་ཆེད་དུ་ཡིན། <sup>22</sup> ད་ལྟའི་བར་དུ་དགོན་མཚོག་གིས་གང་བཞུགས་པ་ཐམས་ཅད་སྐྱེས་ལ་མཐོན་སུམ་ལང་བ་ལྟར་འཕུན་སྐྱེད་འབྱེད་པ་དེ་ཀྱིས་ཤེས། <sup>23</sup> དེ་མ་ཟད་དམ་པའི་ཕྱགས་ཉིད་ལོ་ཉོག་གི་ཕྱད་དང་ལྷན་པ་དེད་རྣམས་ཀྱང་དགོན་མཚོག་གི་སྐྱེས་ལ་མཐོན་སུམ་ལང་དང་། ང་ཚོའི་ལུས་པོ་སྤྲིག་ཉེས་དང་སྐྱུག་བསྐྱེད་ལ་ལས་སྐྱོལ་ཉེ་མི་འཛིག་པའི་ལུས་གསར་པ་འཕྲོད་པར་དེ་སྐྱུག་བྱེད་དུས་ཁོག་ན་འཕུན་སྐྱེད་འབྱེད། <sup>24</sup> གང་ཡིན་ཞེ་ན། རེ་བའི་ནང་དུ་དེད་རྣམས་ཐར་བར་གྱུར། འོན་ཀྱང་མིག་གིས་གང་མཐོང་ཟིན་པ་དེར་རེ་བ་བྱེད་ཆུ་མེད་དེ། མིག་གིས་མཐོང་ཟིན་པ་ལ་སྐྱེས་པའི་སྐྱུག་བྱེད། <sup>25</sup> འོན་ཏེ་གང་རེ་བ་བྱེད་པ་དེ་མི་མཐོང་ན། ངེད་རྣམས་ཀྱིས་བཟོད་པའི་སྐྱོན་ལ་སྐྱུག་བྱེད། <sup>26</sup> དེ་བཞིན་དུ་དམ་པའི་ཕྱགས་ཉིད་ཀྱིས་ང་ཚོ་སྐྱོབ་མེད་པར་རོགས་པ་གནང་། ངེད་རྣམས་ཀྱིས་སྐྱོན་ལས་ཇི་ལྟར་འདེབས་དགོས་པ་མི་ཤེས་ཀྱང་། དམ་པའི་ཕྱགས་ཉིད་ཀྱིས་ཚོག་གིས་སྐྱེ་བར་མི་ཕྱབ་པའི་འཕུན་སྐྱེད་ང་ཚོའི་དོན་ལ་ལྷུང་མཛད། <sup>27</sup> ཡང་དེད་རྣམས་ཀྱི་སེམས་ལ་གཟིགས་མཁན་གྱིས་དམ་པའི་ཕྱགས་ཉིད་ཀྱི་དགོངས་པ་མཐུན། གང་ལགས་ཤེ་ན། དགོན་མཚོག་གི་དགོངས་པ་ལྟར་དམ་པའི་ཕྱགས་ཉིད་ཀྱིས་དང་ལྷན་པ་རྣམས་ཀྱི་དོན་ལ་ལྷུང་མཛད་པས་སོ། <sup>28</sup> དགོན་མཚོག་གིས་དོན་ཐམས་ཅད་མཉམ་དུ་མཛད་དེ་ཁོང་ལ་བརྟེན་ཞིང་ཁོང་གི་དགོངས་པ་ལྟར་བོས་པ་རྣམས་ལ་ཕན་པའི་ཆེད་དུ་ཡིན་པ་དེད་རྣམས་ཀྱིས་ཤེས། <sup>29</sup> གང་ཡིན་ཞེ་ན། ཁོང་གི་སྐྱེས་ལ་སྐྱེན་སྐྱེས་ལ་མཐོན་སུམ་ལང་ལ་མཐོན་སུམ་ལང་ཆེད་དུ་དགོན་མཚོག་གིས་སྐྱེས་ལ་མཐོན་སུམ་ལང་ཁོང་གི་སྐྱེས་དང་འདྲ་བར་འགྱུར་བའི་ཕྱིར་བསྐྱོས་པར་མཛད། <sup>30</sup> ཡང་ཁོང་གིས་སྐྱེས་

བསྐྱོན་པ་རྣམས་པོས་པར་ཡང་མཛད། བོས་པ་རྣམས་རྣམ་པར་དག་པར་ཡང་མཛད། རྣམ་པར་དག་པར་གྱུར་བ་རྣམས་གཟི་བརྗིད་དང་ལྷན་པར་ཡང་མཛད་དོ།

<sup>31</sup> འོ་ན་དོན་དེ་རྣམས་ཀྱི་སློབ་ལ་ཅི་སྲིད། གལ་སྲིད་དཀོན་མཆོག་གིས་དེད་ཀྱི་ཕྱོགས་མཛད་ན་དེད་རྣམས་ལ་སྲུས་ཚོལ་བྱུང། <sup>32</sup> རང་གི་སྲས་ཀྱང་ཕངས་སེམས་མི་མཛད་པར་དེད་ཐམས་ཅད་ཀྱི་དོན་དུ་གཏོང་བར་མཛད་མཁན་གྱིས་སྲས་དང་མཉམ་དུ་བྱུགས་རྗེས་སློབ་པ་དེད་རྣམས་ལ་དོན་ཐམས་ཅད་ཀྱང་མ་གཞན་བ་དེ་ཅི་ལ་སྲིད། <sup>33</sup> དཀོན་མཆོག་གིས་བདམས་པར་མཛད་པ་རྣམས་ལ་ཉེས་སྦྱོན་འཇུགས་མཁན་སྲུ་ཡིན། དཀོན་མཆོག་གི་རྣམ་པར་དག་པར་མཛད་མཁན་ཡིན་པས། <sup>34</sup> བྱིས་ས་གཙོང་གཏོང་མཁན་སྲུ་ཡིན་ནམ། ལྷ་གི་ཀ་ཡེ་བྱ་ཡིན་ནམ། མིན་ཏེ་ཁོང་ནི་གོངས་ཤིང་། དེ་བས་ཀྱང་སྐྱ་གསོན་པོར་བཞེངས་སྲུ་གྱུར་ནས་དཀོན་མཆོག་གི་ཕྱག་གཡས་སྲུ་བཞུགས་མཁན་དེ་ཡིན་པ་མ་ཟད། ཁོང་གིས་དེད་རྣམས་ཀྱི་དོན་དུ་ལྷོད་མཛད། <sup>35</sup> ལྷ་གི་ཀ་ཡེ་བྱ་ཡིན་པ་ལས་དེད་རྣམས་སྲུས་ཐུབ། ལྷ་གི་བསྐྱེད་ལམ། དཀའ་ངལ་ལམ། མནར་གཅོད་དམ། ལྷ་གི་ལམ། ལོ་མེད་ལམ། ཉེན་ལམ། རལ་གྱི་ལ་སོགས་པས་དེད་རྣམས་ཁོང་གི་བྱམས་པ་ལས་ཐུབ་བྱུང་བ་ཡིན་ནམ། <sup>36</sup> མདོ་ལས།

ཁྱེད་ཀྱི་ཆེད་དུ་ང་ཚོ་ཉོན་ལྟར་གསོད།  
གཞན་གྱིས་དེད་རྣམས་བཤས་རྒྱུའི་ལྷག་བཞིན་ཅི།

ཞེས་ལོང། \* <sup>37</sup> གནས་རྒྱུ་དེ་ལྟར་ཡིན་ཡང་དེད་རྣམས་ལ་བྱམས་པར་མཛད་མཁན་བརྒྱུད་ནས་ང་ཚོ་རབ་དུ་རྒྱུལ་ལོ། <sup>38</sup> གང་ལགས་ཟེར་ན། འཆི་ཆོལ་མ། ཕོ་ཉལ་གདོན་ལེན་ལམ། ད་ལྟེང་མ་འོངས་པའི་གནས་རྒྱུ་ལམ། མཐུ་ལྷན་པའམ། <sup>39</sup> མཐོ་གཏོང་ངམ། དཀོན་མཆོག་གིས་གང་བཀོད་པ་ཐམས་ཅད་ལས་གང་ཞིག་གིས་ཀྱང་དེད་རྣམས་ཀྱི་གཙོ་བོ་ལྷ་གི་ལྷ་གི་ཀ་ཡེ་བྱ་ལེན་ནས་མངོན་པའི་དཀོན་མཆོག་གི་བྱམས་པ་ལས་ང་ཚོ་ཐུབ་མི་བྱུང་བར་ངས་ཡིད་ཆེས་ངེས་ལྟོད་དོ།

\* ཆོག་བཅད་འདི་ནི་གསུང་མགུར་ཞེས་པའི་མདོ་ལེན་44 ཡང་གངས་22 རས་བཀོད་པ་ཡིན།

### Vocabulary Practice

#### Exercise 2:

Use the vocabulary words provided to complete the following sentences taken from the text above (change the form as necessary). Try and do them from memory (without looking at the text).

to groan	bound to	to rot away	to compare	to owe	member
absolutely sure		to look forward to		to appoint	to spare
to consider them as		to bring a charge against	hard times	to adopt	
to sentence them to death					

- The suffering we experience now is nothing \_\_\_\_\_ to the glory of heaven.
- Everything created \_\_\_\_\_ the future when God’s children will be changed.
- The world we live in now was \_\_\_\_\_ fail.
- God wants our world to be freed, not to \_\_\_\_\_ completely.
- Our world and all that is in it has been \_\_\_\_\_ and will continue to do so until it is freed by God.
- God will \_\_\_\_\_ us as FULL \_\_\_\_\_ of His family.
- God \_\_\_\_\_ that those who follow Jesus will be saved \_\_\_\_\_ his plans for the world.
- God did NOT \_\_\_\_\_ his Son, but rather allowed him to suffer.
- No one can \_\_\_\_\_ the followers of Jesus, because Jesus has already paid the penalty for all of their wrongs. They have been saved. No one can \_\_\_\_\_ .
- Nothing can separate us from the love of Jesus; not danger, hunger, or any kind of \_\_\_\_\_ .
- People who do not know God will look at the followers of Jesus and \_\_\_\_\_ sheep to be killed.
- However, the followers of Jesus will have victory over death. This we \_\_\_\_\_ to Jesus.
- Those who follow Jesus can be \_\_\_\_\_ that God’s love will ALWAYS be with them.

### Exercise 3:

Practice every day usage of these words by using the vocabulary words in the box to complete the following sentences (change the form as necessary).

hard times    to bring a charge against    to sentence them to death    to owe  
to groan    to consider them as    absolutely sure    to appoint  
to spare    bound to    to compare    in keeping with    member  
to rot away    to adopt    to look forward to

1. He has so many abilities! He is \_\_\_\_\_ succeed!
2. As we walked through the hospital, we heard many people \_\_\_\_\_ .
3. We will always \_\_\_\_\_ as our friends.
4. He was \_\_\_\_\_ as the new leader of their company.
5. The family has been going through \_\_\_\_\_ with their mother being in the hospital.
6. He is a \_\_\_\_\_ of the royal family.
7. He is \_\_\_\_\_ getting a job and earning a salary.
8. They have three children of their own and two are \_\_\_\_\_ .
9. They murdered several people. The judge will certainly \_\_\_\_\_ .
10. No one was \_\_\_\_\_ from the difficulties that came from the flood.
11. \_\_\_\_\_ his personality, he worked late and made sure that everything was ready for the important meetings.
12. Because no one had lived in the house for many years, the roof had \_\_\_\_\_ .
13. How much do you \_\_\_\_\_ the bank for the loan on your house?
14. How does this weather \_\_\_\_\_ with the weather in your home town?
15. They haven't yet arrived yet. Are you \_\_\_\_\_ they are coming tonight?
16. Because he was powerful, everyone was afraid to \_\_\_\_\_ him, even though he had done many things wrong.

### Comprehension Questions

1. Everything that God created looks forward to what?
2. What was the created world bound to do? What did God plan to do after that?
3. This passage describes the world as “groaning” and in “pain.” What is that like?
4. What promise has God given to Christians as a sign of future blessing?
5. What is hope that can be seen?
6. How does the Holy Spirit help us when we are weak?
7. What things does God use to bring good into the lives of those who love him?
8. God has chosen that those who follow Jesus will become like \_\_\_\_\_ ? Why?
9. List all the things that can NOT separate us from Christ's love (17 things) ?

### Deeper Understanding

1. In verses 18-23 we understand that suffering is part of creation. All of God's creation is suffering, including us. However, we have hope in the midst of suffering. What is that hope?
2. The Bible often gives several ideas in the same passage, some of which describe the present and some of which describe the future. List some blessings from this passage which we (believers) have already been given, as well as some blessings which are still to come (the good things that haven't yet happened).
3. Why is hope that can be seen no hope at all?
4. What two ways does the Spirit pray for us? Who else prays for us?
5. In verse 30 we are told three things which God plans for those who follow Jesus. What are those three things?
6. What proves that God will freely give us everything?

### Beyond the Text

1. What does this passage teach about the created world?
2. There are good and bad things in this life. Who would you rather be with, those who are for God or those who are against Him? Who wins in the end?
3. What helps you get through hard times? What encouraging things in this passage will help you in the future when you go through hard times?



## Answers

### Exercise 1:

1. J 2. L 3. N 4. B 5. H 6. P 7. A 8. E  
9. C 10. I 11. G 12. K 13. D 14. O 15. M 16. F

### Exercise 2:

1. compared 2. looks forward to 3. bound to 4. rot away  
5. groaning 6. adopt; members 7. appointed; in keeping with  
8. spare 9. bring a charge against; sentence them to death  
10. hard times 11. consider them as  
12. owe 13. absolutely sure

### Exercise 3:

1. bound to 2. groaning 3. consider them 4. appointed  
5. hard times 6. member 7. looking forward to 8. adopted  
9. sentence them to death 10. spared 11. in keeping with  
12. rotted away 13. owe 14. compare with  
15. absolutely sure 16. bring a charge against

### Comprehension Questions:

1. The time when God's children (Christians) will appear in their full and final glory.
2. (A) The world was bound to fail.  
(B) After it failed, God planned to set it free.
3. It is like giving birth to a child.
4. The Holy Spirit.
5. No hope at all, because we hope for things that we don't yet have or see.
6. He prays for us with groans too deep for words.
7. All things, both good and bad!!!
8. (A) His son, Jesus.  
(B) So that Christ will be the first and most honored among brothers.
9. Trouble, hard times, harm, hunger, nakedness, danger, war, death, life, angels, demons, present, future, any powers, highest places, lowest places, or anything else.

### Deeper Understanding:

1. As Christians (followers of Jesus), our hope is in the fact that God plans to give us new bodies full of glory that will not fail. We will be brought fully into God's family as His children. We will become like his Son, Jesus. The suffering of this world will come to an end.
2. Blessings we already have: the Holy Spirit (the promise of future blessing) v23; hope and salvation v24; the Holy Spirit's help and prayers v25; we were chosen by God v29; we have been saved (made right with God) and given glory v30; God is on our side v31; God gave his own son for us v32; no one can bring charges (guilt) against us v33; no one can sentence us to death v34; Jesus is praying for us v34; nothing can separate us from God's love v35.  
Blessings we don't have yet: A created world which is free v21; adoption as full members of God's family v23; risen bodies with glory v23; we will become like His Son (Jesus) v29; God will freely give us everything else v32; we will more than win v37!
3. Because you already have it, you aren't waiting for it.
4. (A) The Spirit prays for us with groans too deep for words; and the Spirit prays for the things God wants for us.  
(B) Jesus himself prays for us (v34).
5. We are: appointed to be saved; made right with God; and given glory.
6. He did not spare his own Son (Jesus). Since God was willing to send Jesus to suffer for all mankind. God's only Son is more valuable than anything else and yet, God freely offered Him as a sacrifice for our sin. Therefore, it is reasonable to say that God is willing to give us everything!

# Epilogue

Here are some additional questions to help you reflect on what you've learned:

1. What's the big picture? Look at each of the chapter titles and try to summarize the main idea for each one? Can you use two to three sentences to explain the main theme of this whole series?
2. How are these ideas different to anything you've heard before? How are they different from the ideas of other religions you may know about? In what ways are they the same?
3. Do you believe these stories and teachings are true? Why or why not? If you believe they are true, what response is required? What kind of changes in the way you live life would be necessary? Would you be willing to ask God for help in making those changes?
4. Do you know any followers of Jesus? If so, do you feel you better understand them now that you've studied these lessons? If you don't know anyone like this, would you like to meet someone who does follow these teachings?
5. We hope you will share what you've learned with others who might be interested in knowing what you've learned through these stories. What is the best and most understandable way you could share this good news (gospel)?

This study contained only a few of the more well known stories from the Bible. There is a lot more that can be learned from other stories and teachings. If you're interested in knowing more, you might consider getting a copy of the complete Bible. Read it and ask the Holy Spirit to help you understand it. You may also want to find some Christians who can help you with questions you might encounter. There are many other books on the website [www.gsungrab.org](http://www.gsungrab.org) We hope and pray that these materials have been useful in your life and pray that you will continually grow in your knowledge of God and deeper in your relationship with Him.

The Writers

འདིར་སློབ་སྦྱོང་བྱས་པའི་ཁོངས་སུ་དམ་པའི་གསུང་རབ་ནང་གི་ཚུང་གྲགས་ཆེ་བའི་སྐྱུང་གཏམ་འགའ་  
 ཚུད་ཡོད། སྐྱུང་གཏམ་གཞན་རྣམས་ལས་ཀྱང་ནང་དོན་དེ་བས་མང་བ་ཤེས་ཐུབ། གལ་ཏེ་སྐྱུ་  
 ཉིད་ལ་དད་ཞེན་ཡོད་ན། གསུང་རབ་ཡོངས་རྫོགས་སུ་མཐུན་ལྟ་སློབ་གནང་བ་མ་ཟད་དམ་  
 པའི་ཐུགས་ཉིད་ལ་དེའི་དོན་རྟོགས་པའི་སློབ་ལམ་ལུས་དང་། ཡང་ན་སྤྱི་ལཱ་ལ་འགའ་ཞིག་  
 བཅའ་ནས་ལྟ་སློབ་ཚོད་ཀྱི་དཀའ་གནད་རྣམས་དྲིས་ནའང་འགྲིག་ ད་དུང་བྲ་ཚོགས་ [www.gsungrab.org](http://www.gsungrab.org)  
 ཐོག་ཏུ་ལྟ་དེབ་མང་པོ་ཡོད་ལ། གསུང་རབ་ལས་བརྒྱུས་པའི་སྐྱུང་  
 དེབ་གཞན་ཞིག་ཀྱང་ལྷུང་བར་འདོན་སྤེལ་བྱ་རྒྱུ་ཡིན། དེ་ཚོས་དབྱུང་ཡིག་འདི་དག་གིས་སྐྱུ་ཉིད་ཀྱི་  
 འཚོ་བའི་ཚོད་ཡན་རྣམས་གང་མང་ཐོན་པའི་རེ་བ་དང་སློབ་ལམ་འདེབས་ལ། ལུ་མཐུན་དཀོན་མཆོག་སློབ་  
 ཀྱི་ཤེས་བྱ་རིམ་བཞིན་གོང་དུ་འཕེལ་བ། དེ་བཞིན་ཁོང་དང་འབྲེལ་བ་ཅེ་ཟེབ་ཏུ་འགྲོ་བའི་གསོལ་བ་  
 སློབ་ལམ་ཡང་ལུ་རྒྱུ་ཡིན།

རྩོམ་པ་པོས།

这里学习的只是《圣经》中比较有名的几篇故事，从其他故事中我们还能学到很多。如果有兴趣，你不妨找一本《圣经》来读读，并祈求圣灵帮助你去理解它。你可能还需要找到一些基督徒帮你解决读经中所遇到的一些问题。在这个网站：[www.gsungrab.org](http://www.gsungrab.org) 中还有许多其他书籍可供参考，另一本圣经故事集也即将与读者见面。我们希望并祈祷这些资料能够对你有用，我们也祈祷你对上帝的知识能够不断增长，你与上帝的关系能够不断加深。

作者

## What books of the Bible do these stories come from?

---

The Bible was written by 40 people over 1500 years in mostly Hebrew and Greek languages. There are many kinds of writing in the Bible. Some parts are historical writing. Other parts are songs and sayings. Some parts are letters from one follower of God to other followers of God. Here are some explanations of the kind of writings the stories and teachings in this book are taken from.

### **Chapters 1-3 (Noah's Ark and Tower of Babel)**

These stories are taken from the first book of the Bible. It is called Genesis in English, which means “beginning.” It tells about how God made/created everything that exists (the universe, the world, animals, people etc.). It shows us that God is the Ruler and Creator of all things (including us). It also shows how sin entered the world (the stories of Adam and Eve are in “Stories From the Bible Book One”) and how God saved some people from his wrath/anger at sin (Noah's Ark). It also shows us how all the languages of the world came to be (the Tower of Babel). It is a very important foundational book to study if someone wants to understand about following Jesus. It shows the beginning of God's plan to rescue people from their sin and fix/restore a relationship with Him.

### **Chapters 4-11, 15-18 (stories about Jesus and his teachings)**

Jesus is the most important person in the Bible, so stories about Jesus Christ are very important. Jesus is his name, while Christ is a title which means “chosen one.” The English name of the religion (Christianity) comes from this title. A Christian is simply ‘a follower of Christ.’ There are four books (called Gospels) which tell stories about Jesus. These are named after Jesus' friends' who wrote the books. “Stories From the Bible Book Two” has stories about Jesus from three of these books: Mark, Luke and John. These books show us how Jesus came to the world as a baby (which is the story of Christmas and is found in “Stories From the Bible Book One”), as well as how he grew up and lived as a man without sin. These stories show his power and tell us some of his teachings too. Most importantly they show how he died on the cross in our place to take away our sins, defeated death and rose again. This completed the plan God started in the beginning (found in “Book One”).

Jesus also told interesting stories with a special meaning. They are called parables in English. Three are included in this book (chapters 8, 9 and 11).

### **Chapters 12-13 (from Acts)**

After Jesus rose from the dead and appeared to many people, he ascended back into heaven. He promised a “helper” for his followers called the Holy Spirit. The book of Acts (the Acts of the Apostles) tells how the Holy Spirit came to the believers and how they became the early Church. It is a book that tells the story of the beginning of the church, and how they took the good news (or Gospel) of Jesus to many people around the world. It tells of how Jesus' disciples became his apostles (those who spread his teaching to other people) and how Paul became an important apostle too. The good news started among the Israelites, but Paul is the apostle who helped start the spread of the Gospel to all the people in the world (every language and ethnic group). That work continues today.

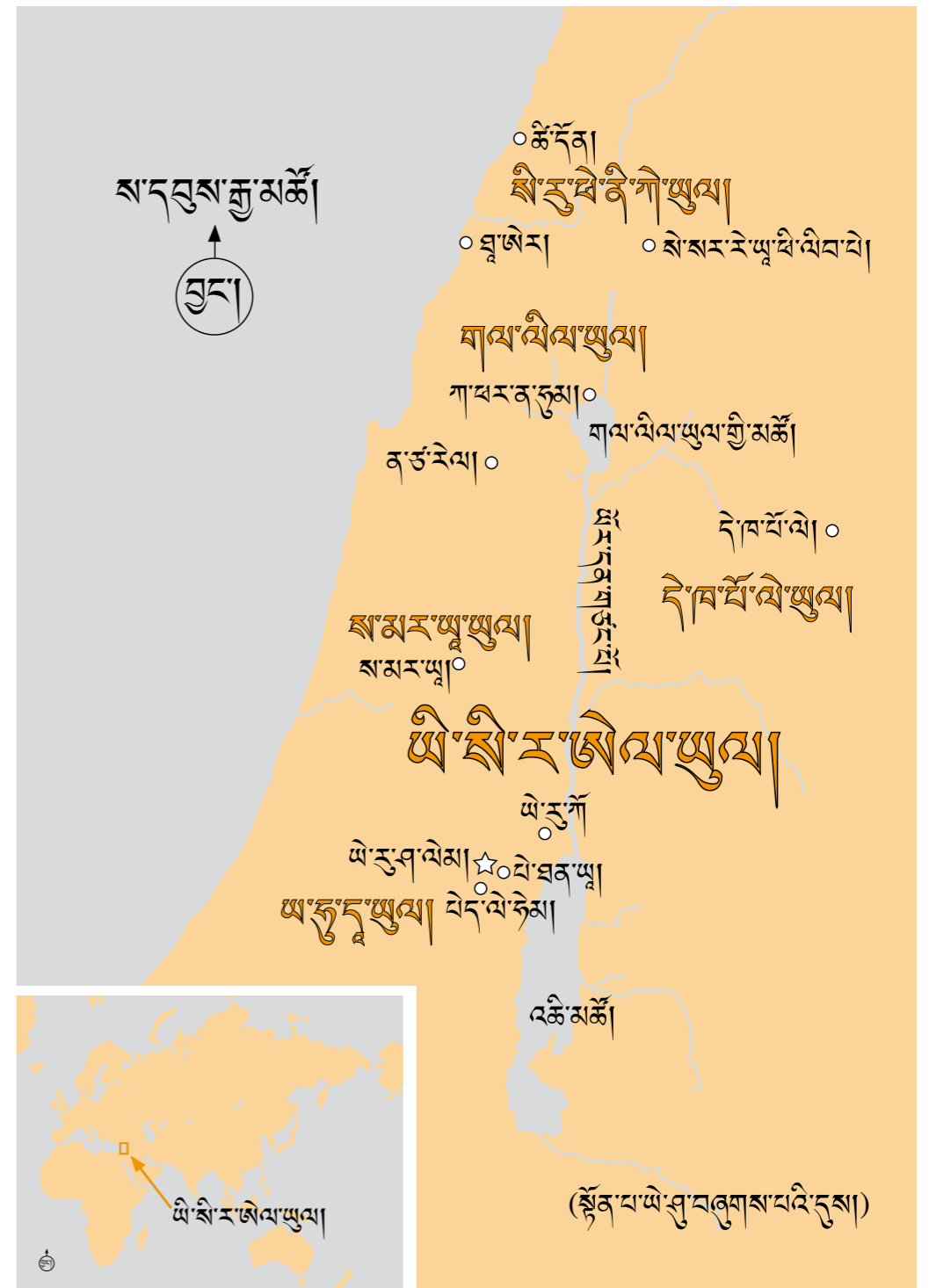
### **Chapters 14, 21 (Letters to the early Christians/Church)**

These two chapters are based on passages from the books of Galatians and Romans, which are two of the letters written by the apostle Paul to the early Church (Christians). Each letter was written to Christians living in a particular region: the book of Galatians is written to those in Galatia (modern day Turkey); and the book of Romans is written to the church in Rome (in Italy). These letters are called epistles in English. They were written to followers of Jesus to encourage them and help them in difficult times. Paul wanted to help them learn more clearly about Jesus and strengthen them in the good news that Jesus died to save them from their sins. He also wanted to remind them that Jesus promised to come back to the earth some day in the future. Although most of these letters were written to a specific church or specific group of Christians, the truth in them applies to us too, no matter what time or place we live in.

### **Chapters 19 and 20 (James)**

The book of James was written by a man named James (most probably the brother of Jesus) who was a leader in the early Church and had known Jesus very well. His words are helpful to all believers and contain many practical ways to help us live as followers of Jesus. It tells us to be faithful and not give up in what we believe. James encourages us to live in a way that agrees with or shows what we believe. He wrote to Christians who were going through very difficult trials, just as people today experience hard times. This book is full of wise advice, and therefore Christians everywhere can learn many helpful things by studying it.

# Map



## A Glossary of Technical Terms བར་སྐོད་ཀྱི་ཚིག་སྐོད་ཐ་སྟོན།

Match .....	འབྲེལ་མཐུན།
Blank .....	སྟོང་ཆ།
Grammar .....	བར་སྐོད།
Vocabulary .....	ཚིག་གསལ།
Clause.....	ཚིག་གྲུབ་མལ་པ།
Noun (N).....	མིང་ཚིག།
Pronoun.....	ཚབ་ཚིག།
Verb (V).....	བྱ་ཚིག།
Adjective (Adj).....	ཐུན་ཚིག།
Adverb (Adv).....	རྣམ་པ་སྟོན་ཚིག།
Subject (S).....	བྱེད་པ་པོ།
Object (Obj).....	བྱ་བའི་ཡུལ།
Preposition.....	ཡུལ་ཚིག།
Discussion questions.....	བསྐོར་གླེང་གི་གཞི།
Pre-Reading.....	སྟོན་གྲོགས།
Passive.....	གཞན་དབང།
Skim read.....	ལྷུང་གྲོགས།
Regular.....	དེས་ཅན་བྱ་ཚིག།
Irregular.....	དེས་མེད་བྱ་ཚིག།
Exercise.....	སྒྱུར་གཞི།
Parenthesis.....	ཤུག་རྟགས།
Corresponding.....	ཐིག་སྒྲེལ།
Translation.....	ཡིག་སྒྱུར།
Auxiliary verb.....	རམ་འདེགས་བྱ་ཚིག།
Modal verb.....	ཉམས་སྟོན་བྱ་ཚིག།
Countable.....	བགང་སྒྲུབ་པའི་མིང།
Non-countable.....	བགང་མི་སྒྲུབ་པའི་མིང།
Metaphor.....	དབེ་རྒྱན།